

**Cellulose Solvents-based Pretreatment for Enhanced  
Second-generation Biofuels Production: A Review**

Journal:	<i>Sustainable Energy &amp; Fuels</i>
Manuscript ID	SE-REV-06-2018-000287.R2
Article Type:	Review Article
Date Submitted by the Author:	26-Sep-2018
Complete List of Authors:	Satari, Behzad; Isfahan University of Technology, Department of Chemical Engineering Karimi, Keikhosro; Isfahan University of Technology, Department of Chemical Engineering Kumar, Rajeev; University of California, Center for Environmental Research and Technology

1                   **Cellulose solvents-based pretreatment for enhanced second-generation**  
2   **biofuels production: A review**

3   Behzad Satari,<sup>1</sup> Keikhosro Karimi,<sup>1,2</sup> and Rajeev Kumar<sup>3,4,5,\*</sup>

4                   <sup>1</sup>**Department of Chemical Engineering, Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan 84156-**  
5   **83111, Iran**

6                   <sup>2</sup>Industrial Biotechnology Group, Research Institute for Biotechnology and Bioengineering,  
7                   Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan 84156-83111, Iran

8                   <sup>3</sup>Center for Environmental Research and Technology (CE-CERT), Bourns College of  
9                   Engineering, University of California Riverside (UCR), Riverside, CA, 92507, USA

10                   <sup>4</sup>BioEnergy Science Center (BESC), Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL), Oak Ridge, TN,  
11                   USA

12                   <sup>5</sup>Center for Bioenergy Innovation (CBI), Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL), Oak Ridge,  
13                   TN, USA

14

15                   \*corresponding author

16

**Abstract**

Cellulose, in addition to hemicellulose and lignin, makes the major fraction of lignocellulosic biomass- the only sustainable feedstock to meet the long-term sustainable energy need of the world. Cellulose is soluble in a number of solvents, e.g., concentrated phosphoric acid (CPA), N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMMO), and ionic liquids (ILs), and can be regenerated by an anti-solvent without major derivatization for various applications. For one, the regenerated and much less crystalline cellulose is highly reactive for its biological conversion to sugars, fuels, and chemicals mediated with enzymes and/or microbes. This ability can be used as a core pretreatment step for improved bioprocessing of lignocelluloses. In this comprehensive review, cellulose solvent-based lignocellulosic fractionation technologies for enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis to improve biofuels and renewable chemicals production are reviewed. The first part is focused on the background information of lignocellulosic biomass, lignocellulosic derived biogas, biohydrogen, and ethanol as well as acetone, butanol, and ethanol (ABE) production, and enzymatic hydrolysis. In the second part, the conditions for pretreatments applying CPA, NMMO, and ILs solvents, improvements in enzymatic hydrolysis rates and yields for solids resulting from application of these pretreatments, and the features of lignocellulosic structure affecting the improved bioprocessing have been thoroughly reviewed.

**Keywords:** Cellulose; solvent; pretreatment; enzymatic hydrolysis; biogas; ethanol; lignocellulose; ionic liquid

## Abbreviation

<b>Anaerobic digestion</b>	AD
<b>1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium chloride</b>	[BMIM][Cl]
<b>Cellulose binding module</b>	CBM
<b>Concentrated phosphoric acid</b>	CPA
<b>Consolidated bioprocessing</b>	CBP
<b>Cellulose accessibility to cellulase</b>	CAC
<b>Cellulose solvent- and organic solvent-based lignocellulosic fractionation</b>	COSLIF
<b>Crystallinity index</b>	CrI
<b>1-Ethyl-3-methylimidazolium acetate</b>	[EMIM][OAc]
<b>Greenhouse gas</b>	GHG
<b>Ionic liquid</b>	IL
<b>Lateral order index</b>	LOI
<b>National renewable energy laboratory</b>	NREL
<b>N-methyl-morpholine-N-oxide</b>	NMMO or NMO
<b>Room-temperature ionic liquid</b>	RTIL
<b>Single cell oil</b>	SCO
<b>Soaking in aqueous ammonia</b>	SAA
<b>Simons' Stain</b>	SS
<b>Specific surface area</b>	SSA
<b>Total crystallinity index</b>	TCI
<b>Total reducing sugar</b>	TRS
<b>Volatile fatty acid</b>	VFA
<b>Water retention value</b>	WRV

1	<b>Contents</b>	
2	1 Different generations and types of biofuels .....	3
3	1.1 Bioethanol.....	6
4	1.2 Biobutanol.....	7
5	1.3 Biodiesel .....	8
6	1.4 Biogas .....	10
7	1.5 Biohydrogen.....	11
8	2 Lignocellulosic biomass structure.....	13
9	3 Biomass recalcitrance and pretreatment.....	18
10	4 Hydrolysis of pretreated lignocellulosic substrate.....	21
11	5 Obstacles in the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses and the role of pretreatment.....	26
12	5.1 Cellulose crystallinity and degree of polymerization (DP).....	27
13	5.2 Cellulose accessibility to cellulases .....	29
14	5.2.1 Cellulase adsorption.....	30
15	5.3 Hemicellulose content.....	31
16	5.4 Lignin content .....	32
17	5.4.1 Adsorption of cellulases on lignin .....	33
18	5.4.2 Lignin-derived phenolic compounds.....	34
19	5.5 Formation of inhibitory byproducts .....	35
20	6 Concentrated phosphoric acid pretreatment.....	38
21	6.1 Criteria for efficient phosphoric acid pretreatment.....	45
22	6.2 Why is phosphoric acid so effective in enhancing enzymatic hydrolysis? .....	47
23	6.3 Summary and future perspectives of phosphoric acid pretreatment .....	49
24	7 N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMMO) pretreatment.....	50
25	7.1 Effect of NMMO pretreatment on the superstructure of lignocelluloses.....	52
26	7.2 Changes in composition and microstructure during NMMO pretreatment .....	54
27	7.2.1 Cellulose accessibility to cellulases .....	55
28	7.3 Advantages and disadvantages of NMMO pretreatment .....	56
29	8 Ionic liquid pretreatment.....	61
30	8.1 Ionic liquids: historical evolution and general properties .....	61
31	8.2 Solvation in ILs.....	62
32	8.2.1 Dissolution of cellulose in ILs .....	63
33	8.2.2 Dissolution and regeneration of lignocellulosic biomass in ILs .....	67
34	8.2.2.1 Role of solvent in regeneration of cellulose from IL solution .....	69
35	8.2.2.2 Biomass loading.....	70
36	8.2.3 Dissolution of lignin in IL.....	71
37	8.3 Effects of ILs pretreatment on the cellulose structure .....	74
38	8.4 Acid-catalyzed hydrolysis in ionic liquids.....	77
39	8.5 Enhancement in enzymatic digestibility of IL-pretreated lignocelluloses.....	81
40	8.6 Challenges with in-situ enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses in aqueous-IL media .....	82
41	8.7 Recovery and reuse of ionic liquids.....	88
42	8.8 IL pretreatment of lignocelluloses for enhanced biogas and renewable chemicals production.....	90
43	8.9 Techno-economic analysis of ionic liquid pretreatment .....	92
44	8.10 Present status and future prospects of IL pretreatment .....	93
45	9 Concluding remarks .....	96
46		

## 47 **1 Different generations and types of biofuels**

48 Recent concerns about climate change due to greenhouse gas emissions and energy crisis have  
49 prompted the need for transition from unsustainable fossil-derived energies to sustainable and  
50 renewable energies.<sup>1</sup>

51 Development of sustainable and economically viable biorefinery process for biofuel production  
52 needs to use renewable carbon sources.<sup>2</sup> Biofuels produced from food-based crops like sugar-  
53 and starch-based substrates, e.g., sugarcane and corn, are considered as first-generation  
54 biofuels.<sup>3,4</sup> Nevertheless, there is a food-versus-fuel debate in using the feedstocks for first-  
55 generation fuels. Therefore, the next-generation biofuels were introduced and are considered as  
56 essential for meeting the world's energy demand in the transportation sector.<sup>5-7</sup>

57 Second-generation biofuels are produced from lignocellulosic biomass, which can reduce the  
58 carbon emission, increase energy efficiency, and reduce nations' energy dependency.<sup>3,7-9</sup> Non-  
59 food lignocellulosic substrates are abundant and potentially low-cost organic source for  
60 renewable chemicals and fuels production. Lignocellulosic wastes can be originated from  
61 industrial wastes (e.g., sawdust, paper mill discards, and food industry wastes), forestry wastes  
62 (i.e., hardwoods and softwoods), agricultural residues (e.g., straws, stover, and non-food seeds),  
63 domestic wastes (e.g., kitchen wastes, sewage, and waste papers), and municipal solid wastes.<sup>10-</sup>  
64 <sup>12</sup>

65 Third-generation biofuels are produced from algae.<sup>13,14</sup> Biofuels production from algal species,  
66 including *Botryococcus braunii*, *Chaetocero calcitrans*, several *Chlorella* species, *Isochrysis*  
67 *galbana*, *Nanochloropsis*, *Schizochytrium limacinum*, and *Scenedesmus* species, is a promising  
68 technology since algae is fast growing, compared to many terrestrial plants, with no soil need,

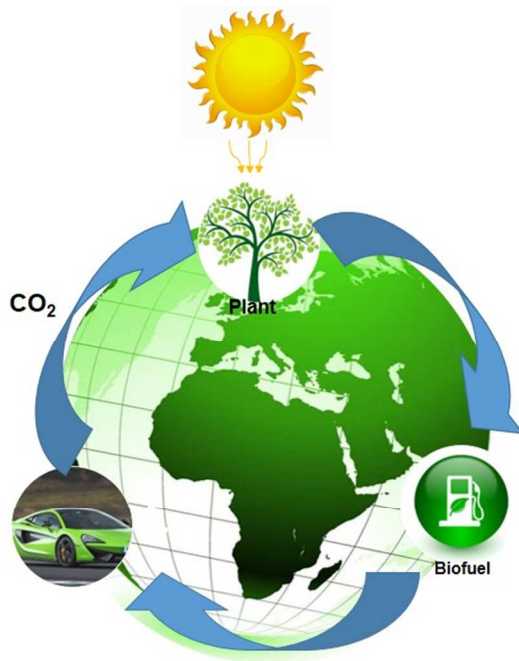
69 while they have high capturing ability for CO<sub>2</sub> and other greenhouse gases.<sup>15</sup> Algae contain  
70 substantial amounts of carbohydrates and lipid (up to 70%), making them promising feedstocks  
71 for converting to biofuels, e.g., by simple hydrolysis followed by fermentation or consolidated  
72 bioprocessing.<sup>16</sup> A comprehensive overview on the composition, properties, and challenges of  
73 algae biomass for biofuel application was recently presented by Vassilev and Vassileva.<sup>17</sup>  
74 Biodiesel, bioethanol, biohydrogen, and biogas were reported to be produced from micro- and  
75 macro-algae via different technologies.<sup>13,14</sup>

76 Fourth-generation biofuels use engineered algae for biofuels production from oxygenic  
77 photosynthetic organisms.<sup>18</sup> Gaseous biofuels, algal ethanol, algal butanol, four carbon alcohols,  
78 and algal biodiesel were reported to be possible to produce by using this technology.<sup>18</sup>

79 Nonetheless, the production cost of biofuel is extremely sensitive to the feedstock cost.<sup>19</sup>  
80 Although algae do not need freshwater and can grow on wastewater streams (e.g., saline/brackish  
81 water/coastal seawater), harvesting and carbon supply are the major factors of algal biomass  
82 production cost.<sup>20</sup> Harvesting microalgae usually needs flocculation to aggregate small algal cells  
83 followed by filtration, centrifugation, and sedimentation to separate the algae from liquid  
84 medium. Besides, advanced and cheaper technologies are required for the extraction of algal oil.  
85 Although the land use is low for algal cultivation, infrastructure requirements, mixing, and  
86 separation costs are still high. Moreover, the high cost of edible crops and land requirements to  
87 meet the demand make them unsustainable. Therefore, lignocellulosic biomass is the only  
88 sustainable and low-cost feedstock to meet the near future growing energy needs and mitigate  
89 environmental problems.<sup>20,21</sup>

90 Regarding environmental impacts, all types of biofuel reduce greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions<sup>22</sup>  
91 (Figure 1). Life cycle assessment for biofuel production from different sources was performed

92 and the net GHG emission for different fuels, e.g., fossil fuel, soya oil biodiesel, palm biodiesel,  
93 sugarcane ethanol, wheat ethanol, corn ethanol, corn stover ethanol, and algal biodiesel, was  
94 compared.<sup>21,23</sup> It was shown that among them corn stover derived ethanol released the lowest net  
95 GHG emission.



96

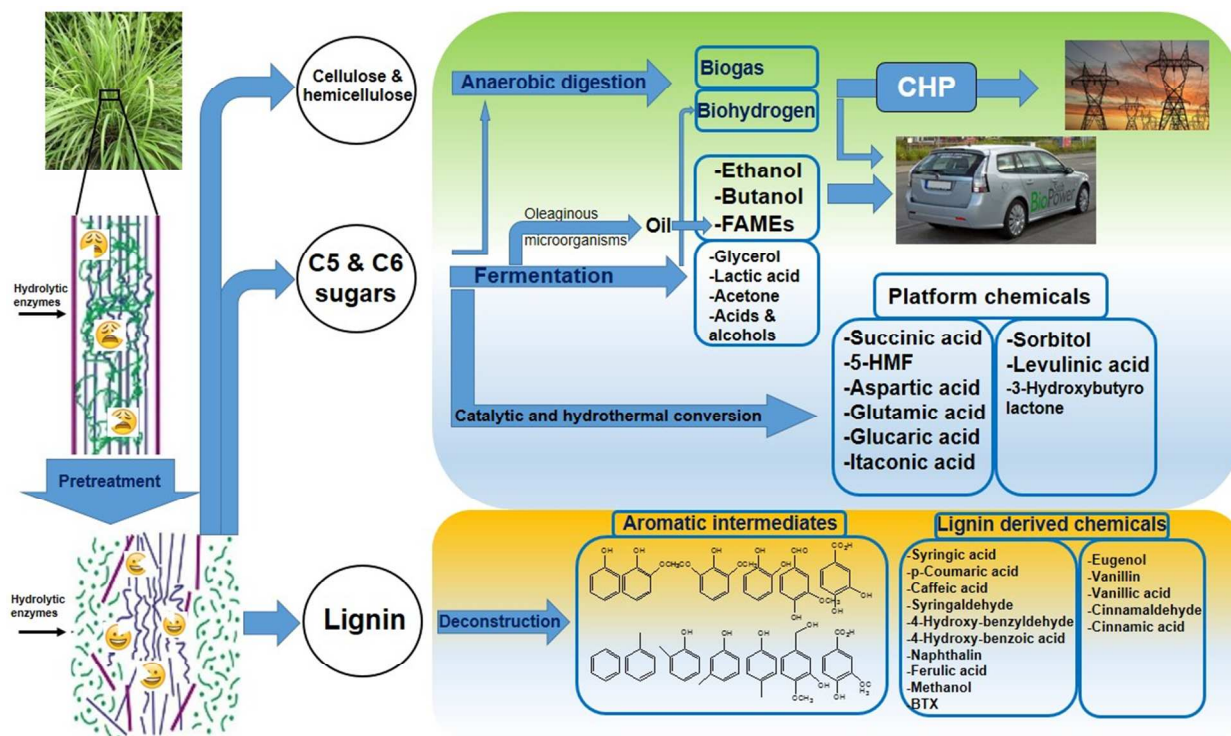
97 **Figure 1.** A simplified diagram showing a neutral carbon cycle for biofuels production from plants

98

99 Less (or negligible) competition to food, production of value-added byproducts, and energy  
100 security are among the advantages of second-generation biofuels. As shown schematically in  
101 Figure 2, the main steps for second-generation biofuels and chemicals production are usually  
102 substrate preparation, including size reduction and pretreatment, carbohydrate saccharification,  
103 fermentation, and product separation and purification.<sup>24</sup> The processing cost for second-  
104 generation ethanol is approximately two to three times higher than gasoline on an energy  
105 equivalent basis,<sup>25</sup> therefore, substantial attention has recently focused on the improvement of



106 process economy and technology development to make second-generation biofuels economically  
 107 viable.



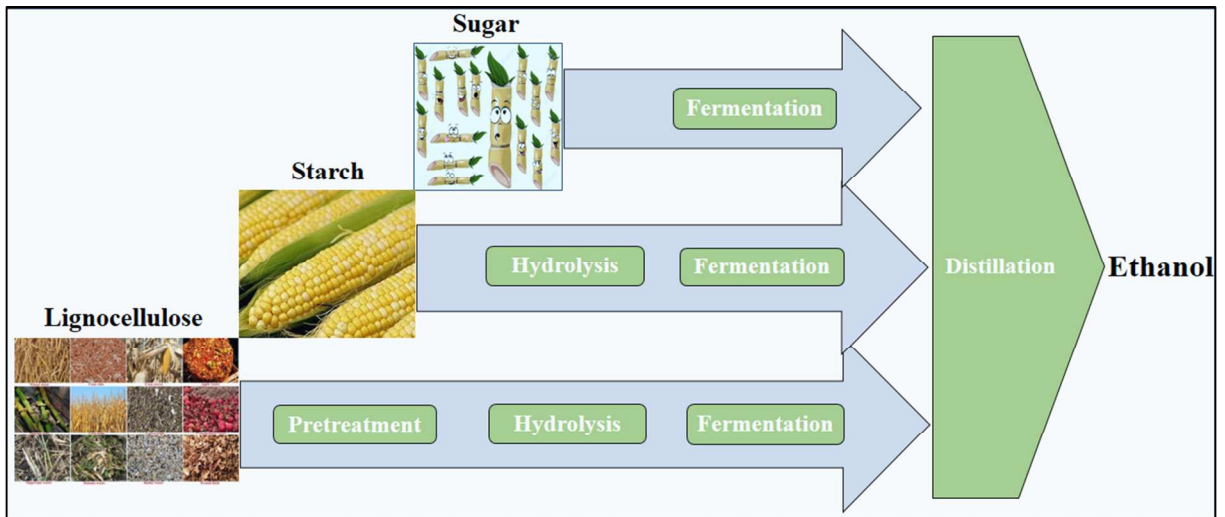
108  
 109 **Figure 2.** Schematic of various chemicals production from lignocellulosic feedstocks (second-generation  
 110 biofuels and chemicals)

111

## 112 1.1 Bioethanol

113 Ethanol, blended with gasoline or as a neat fuel in vehicles, is an attractive transportation fuel,  
 114 giving high octane number and heat of vaporization.<sup>26</sup> Currently, ethanol mainly produced by  
 115 fermentation routes using sugar- and starch-based feedstocks, e.g., sugarcane and maize, is called  
 116 first-generation ethanol<sup>27</sup> (Figure 3). Following fermentation, ethanol is separated and purified  
 117 from the fermentation broth via distillation and molecular sieves, respectively.<sup>28</sup> The industrial  
 118 technology for the fermentation of glucose to ethanol is quite robust and high concentrations of  
 119 ethanol (12-15%) can be achieved.<sup>29</sup> In production of ethanol from starch, an extra step of

120 liquefaction and saccharification by  $\alpha$ -amylases and glucoamylases, respectively, is necessary for  
 121 converting starch to sugar<sup>30</sup> (Figure 3). Since the production capability of the first-generation  
 122 ethanol is limited and is unsustainable at large scale, second-generation ethanol was then  
 123 introduced, which utilizes variety of lignocelluloses as substrate.<sup>27,31</sup> (Figure 3).



124

125 **Figure 3.** Conversion of different feedstocks to ethanol via fermentation route. The conversion from  
 126 sugar- and starchy-based materials to ethanol is called first-generation and production from  
 127 lignocelluloses is called second-generation.

128

## 129 1.2 Biobutanol

130 For gasoline blending, butanol, a four-carbon alcohol, is more desirable than ethanol due to  
 131 higher energy density, lower hygroscopicity, lower Reid vapor pressure, better blending ability,  
 132 and use in conventional combustion engines without modification.<sup>32</sup> Besides the fuel extender,  
 133 biobutanol can be used as a feedstock for the synthesis of a variety of commercial products.<sup>33,34</sup>  
 134 Fermentative route of production, e.g., by the microorganisms that belong to the genus  
 135 *Clostridium*, is more sustainably and environmentally attractive than the petrochemical route.<sup>35</sup>  
 136 These microorganisms typically produce a mixture of different solvents, mainly including  
 137 acetone, ethanol, and butanol; thus, the process is referred to acetone-butanol-ethanol (ABE)

138 fermentation.<sup>36,37</sup> However, the major challenge in the microbial production of butanol is low  
139 butanol titer due to product inhibition.<sup>38,39</sup> Several strategies have been reported to address these  
140 issues<sup>40</sup> such as genetic and metabolic engineering of microorganisms<sup>40</sup> and promising integrated  
141 continuous culture technology with efficient product recovery techniques, e.g., using metal-  
142 organic frameworks,<sup>41</sup> liquid-liquid extraction,<sup>42-44</sup> pervaporation technique,<sup>45</sup> and gas  
143 stripping.<sup>46</sup>

144 Butanol can be synthesized via different metabolic and engineered pathways from different  
145 substrates. Starch/sugars can be converted to butanol via clostridial route that includes  
146 glycolysis, pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase, thiolase, 3-hydroxybutyryl-CoA dehydrogenase,  
147 crotonase, butyryl-CoA dehydrogenase, and butyraldehyde/butanol dehydrogenase. The  
148 conversion of lignocellulosic feedstocks to biobutanol also follows the same route after being  
149 converted to C<sub>5</sub> and C<sub>6</sub> sugars in the preceding pretreatment and/or enzymatic saccharification  
150 steps. Lignocellulosic biobutanol production has received a lot of attention, and it has recently  
151 been the focus of vast studies.<sup>47,48</sup> However, the low butanol titers and yields and requirement of  
152 extra pretreatment and enzymatic saccharification steps are some of the challenges in butanol  
153 production from lignocellulosic biomass. Moreover, syngas or CO<sub>2</sub>/H<sub>2</sub> can also be fermented to  
154 butanol via clostridial pathway.<sup>49</sup> For starch and sugars, there is another non-fermentative  
155 pathway based on amino acid metabolism plus 2-keto acid decarboxylase and alcohol  
156 dehydrogenase.<sup>36</sup> Aerobic butane-utilizing bacteria use monooxygenase to oxidize butane to a  
157 butanol mixture (95% butanol, 5% iso-butanol).<sup>36</sup>

### 158 **1.3 Biodiesel**

159 Biodiesel, a mixture of fatty acid methyl esters (FAMES), can be produced by transesterification  
160 of vegetable oil or animal fat. It recently received much attention as a renewable source of

161 energy.<sup>50,51</sup> However, these resources for biodiesel production do not meet the large-scale  
162 demands for transportation fuel and a sustainable renewable source is required.

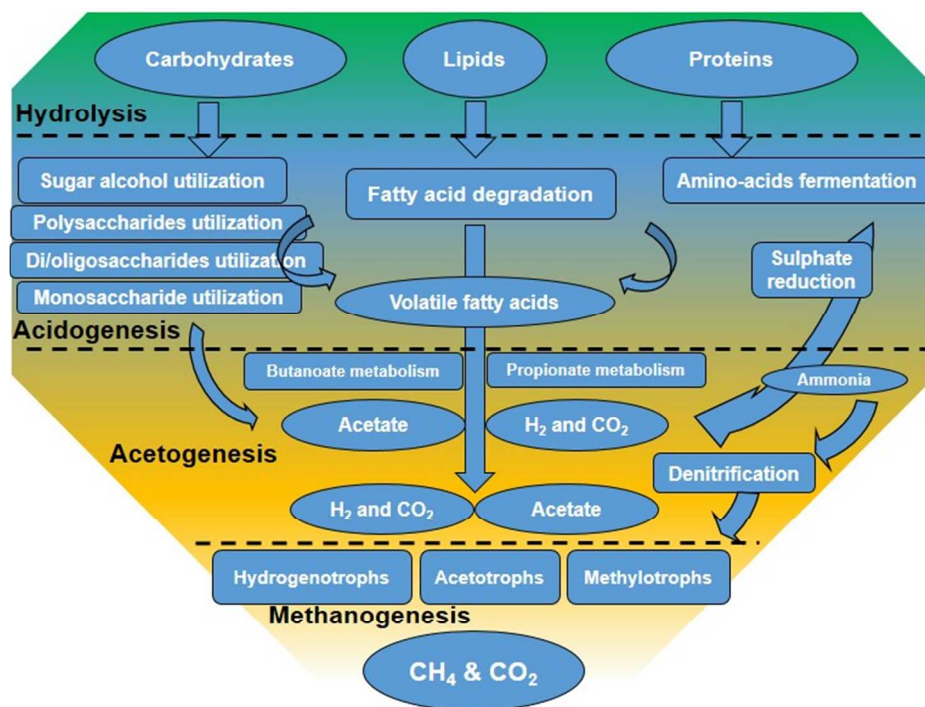
163 Nonetheless, some microorganisms, called oleaginous microorganisms, can store intracellular  
164 lipids, usually referred to single cell oil (SCO), especially triacylglycerols (TAGs).<sup>51</sup> Microbial  
165 oil, as a raw feedstock for biodiesel production, is advantageous compared to vegetable oil  
166 because of short life cycle, less labor required, less affected by venue, season, and climate, and  
167 easier to scale up.<sup>52</sup> Different oleaginous microorganisms, including microalgae, yeasts, fungi,  
168 and bacteria, were reported to produce substantial amounts of SCO (e.g., 20–50% dry cell  
169 weight).<sup>53-55</sup> However, it is possible to increase the lipids accumulation in oleaginous  
170 microorganisms via metabolic engineering technology, involving the enhancement of fatty acid  
171 synthesis approach, enhancement of TAG synthesis approach, regulation of related TAG  
172 biosynthesis bypass approaches, blocking of competing pathways, and multigene approach.<sup>56</sup>

173 A variety of carbon sources from lignocellulose-based carbohydrates and other low-cost  
174 industrial wastes, e.g., glycerol, food processing waste, and even wastewater, have been reported  
175 to be assimilated by oleaginous microorganisms to produce lipid.<sup>57-61</sup> Auxiliary nutrients such as  
176 phosphorous and nitrogen are available from the waste streams. However, lipid accumulation in  
177 oleaginous microorganisms is usually triggered by a nutrient starvation, e.g., nitrogen or  
178 phosphorus, relative to the carbon source.<sup>62</sup>

179 Lipid production from lignocellulosic biomass has attracted substantial attention in the recent  
180 years and many researches have focused on its commercialization; however, substantial process  
181 improvements and reduction in the production cost are required.<sup>63-66</sup>

## 182 1.4 Biogas

183 Besides the liquid biofuels, the biomass with high organic content can be converted to another  
184 form of energy, biogas, via anaerobic digestion (AD). In this process, the organic matter is  
185 biologically decomposed by an assortment of microbes in an oxygen-free condition and produce  
186 biogas (about 50-75% CH<sub>4</sub> and 25-50% CO<sub>2</sub>).<sup>67,68</sup> AD process can be divided into four steps: (i)  
187 hydrolysis of proteins and lipids to amino acids and long-chain fatty acids and carbohydrates into  
188 sugars, (ii) conversion of hydrolysis products and monomers to volatile fatty acids (VFAs) and  
189 other minor products such as alcohol by acidogenic bacteria, (iii) conversion of VFAs to acetate,  
190 carbon dioxide, and/or hydrogen by acetogenic bacteria, and (iv) methane formation from the  
191 other stage products by methanogenesis<sup>69</sup> (  
192 Figure 4). Although methanogenesis is usually considered as the rate-limiting step in AD process  
193 for a number of substrates, the hydrolysis step is believed to be the limiting step for  
194 lignocelluloses. Sawatdeenarunat et al.<sup>70</sup> classified the current technologies in AD process of  
195 lignocellulosic biomass to anaerobic co-digestion, solid-state anaerobic digestion (SS-AD) (more  
196 than 15% TS) and using alternative biological pretreatment of feedstock for further biological  
197 conversion to sugars, e.g., by using rumen microorganisms.



198  
199

200 **Figure 4.** The main steps in degradation of organic matters through anaerobic digestion process<sup>71</sup>

## 201 1.5 Biohydrogen

202 Biologically produced hydrogen, biohydrogen, is recently becoming of great interest as a  
 203 renewable energy carrier, because hydrogen utilization for combustion, in fuel cell, and/or  
 204 electricity production produces no carbon byproducts.<sup>72</sup> Biological pathways for hydrogen  
 205 production are primarily divided into photobiological processes and light independent  
 206 methods.<sup>73,74</sup> Green algae from the genera *Chlamydomonas*, *Scenedesmus*, *Lobochlamys*, and  
 207 *Chlorella* can reduce protons of water in the presence of light to produce mixed oxygen and  
 208 hydrogen gases.<sup>75</sup> Some photosynthetic bacteria were also reported to produce hydrogen by the  
 209 same mechanism of biophotolysis as that of by the green algae. Fermentative biohydrogen  
 210 production, classified as photofermentation and dark fermentation, can be performed by a wide  
 211 variety of microorganisms, e.g., strict anaerobes, facultative anaerobes, and aerobes kept under  
 212 anoxic conditions.<sup>73,76</sup> Fermentative hydrogen production is more advantageous over

213 photosynthetic method since various organic feedstocks can be converted to hydrogen with high  
214 production rates and simple operations.<sup>77</sup> Several factors, including inoculum, i.e., mixed and  
215 pure cultures, substrate, reactor type, availability of nitrogen and phosphate micro-nutrients and  
216 metal ions, temperature, and pH, were reported to influence fermentative hydrogen  
217 production.<sup>78,79</sup> Because of higher hydrogen evolution rate, dark fermentation hydrogen  
218 production is more commercially feasible than photofermentation. In dark fermentation, organic  
219 substrates like glucose are converted by facultative and obligate anaerobes to hydrogen, volatile  
220 fatty acids, and carbon dioxide operated at mesophilic, thermophilic, or hyperthermophilic  
221 temperatures in the absence of light.<sup>80</sup> The knowledge in biological pathways for dark  
222 fermentation hydrogen production is quite mature and is comprehensively presented in the  
223 literature.<sup>73,75,76,80-85</sup> Here a brief discussion on the strategies to enhance biological hydrogen  
224 production and the feedstocks is presented.

225 Different carbon sources, e.g., agricultural residues, industrial waste, organic fraction of  
226 municipal waste, and pure sugars, were reported as feedstock for biohydrogen production.<sup>72,86,87</sup>  
227 Lignocellulosic feedstocks are promising raw materials for biohydrogen production and recently  
228 have been the focus of a number of studies.<sup>72</sup> Different approaches for bioconversion of  
229 lignocellulosic biomass to H<sub>2</sub>, i.e., separate hydrolysis and fermentation, simultaneous  
230 saccharification and fermentation, and consolidated bioprocessing of lignocellulosic biomass to  
231 H<sub>2</sub>, have been discussed by Cheng et al.<sup>72</sup> and Ren et al.<sup>88</sup> Application of various pretreatment  
232 technologies for enhanced lignocellulosic bioconversion to biohydrogen have been also the topic  
233 of several studies.<sup>89-93</sup>

234 While theoretical hydrogen yield is 12 mole H<sub>2</sub> per mole of glucose, natural and genetically  
235 modified microorganisms can produce hydrogen at a maximum yield of 4 mole/mole glucose

236 when acetic acid is the only VFA product.<sup>85</sup> The strategies for biohydrogen production  
237 improvement include microbial culture immobilization, bioreactor modifications, optimization of  
238 operational parameters (i.e., temperature, pH, organic loading rate, hydrolytic retention time, and  
239 H<sub>2</sub> partial pressure), substrate type and inorganic nutrients, metabolic engineering of microbes,  
240 and cogeneration of biohydrogen and biomethane.<sup>73,78,81,94,95</sup>

241 The inoculum for dark fermentation biohydrogen production can be either pure cultures or  
242 anaerobic microbial consortia. Mixed culture is generally preferable because of the easiness to  
243 operate, no need for sterilization, and, especially for lignocelluloses, the presence of hydrolytic  
244 activities.<sup>96</sup> In such systems, methanogenesis activity can be easily eradicated by a heat shock or  
245 pH control, and the hydrogen-producing bacteria can sporulate.<sup>74,97</sup>

246 Another noteworthy approach based on cell-free hydrogen production was originally proposed  
247 by Dr. Jonathan Woodward at Oak Ridge National Laboratory,<sup>98,99</sup> and then has recently been  
248 revived by Ye et al.<sup>100</sup> and Zhang et al.<sup>101</sup>

## 249 **2 Lignocellulosic biomass structure**

250 Lignocelluloses typically contain lignin, carbohydrate polymers (~75%; i.e., cellulose,  
251 hemicellulose, and pectin), acetate, proteins, salt, ash, and minerals.<sup>102</sup> Table 1 summarizes the  
252 major composition (carbohydrates and lignin) of some lignocelluloses used for second-  
253 generation biofuels production. Being the nature's most abundant organic substance after  
254 cellulose, lignin comprises 28-30% of woody gymnosperm stems and 20-24% of woody  
255 angiosperms.<sup>103</sup> Lignin composition varies between hardwoods and softwoods. Lignin has a  
256 heterogeneous three dimensional  $\beta$ -O-4,  $\beta$ -5,  $\beta$ -1,  $\beta$ - $\beta$ , 5-5, and 4-O-5 linked structure of  
257 phenylpropane units, e.g., p-hydroxycinnamyl, p-coumaryl, coniferyl, guaiacyl, syringyl, and


















258 sinapyl alcohol.<sup>102,104</sup> Lignin acts as a cement to hold the cell components together and provides  
 259 the biomass integrity.<sup>105</sup>

260 Cellulose, with over 10<sup>11</sup> metric tons production per year, is composed of linear chains of several  
 261 hundreds to over ten thousand of  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranose residues linked by  $\beta$ -1,4 glycosidic bond  
 262 with numerous inter- and intra-molecular hydrogen bonds.<sup>106</sup> It is a ubiquitous polysaccharide of  
 263 plant cell wall (Figure 5), which makes it insoluble in water and common organic  
 264 solvents.<sup>104,107,108</sup> Aggregation of cellulose chains forms nanofibrils and a 5–10 nm microfibril,  
 265 hypothesized to be composed of 36 chains of cellulose, is used to define the next level of  
 266 aggregation, which is observable via high magnification microscopy, e.g., electron microscopy,  
 267 and atomic force microscopy<sup>109-112</sup> (Figure 5). Cellulose is the dominant component of primary  
 268 cell wall (20–40% of cell wall dry matter).<sup>113</sup> The research on cellulose revealed that native  
 269 celluloses are crystalline and are composites of two forms, I $_{\alpha}$  (with one-chain triclinic structure)  
 270 and I $_{\beta}$  (a two-chain monoclinic structure), which coexist in all native forms.<sup>107</sup>

271

272 **Table 1.** Composition (based on % dry weight) of some widely used lignocelluloses for second-  
 273 generation biofuels production\*

Biomass type	Substrate	Glucan	Xylan	Mannan	Galactan	Arabinan	Lignin			Ref.
							Total	Acid insoluble	Acid soluble	
Hardwood	Eucalyptus 	41.7	14.3	2.6	3.2	2.0	30.2			114
	Oak 	45.2	20.3	4.2	-	-		21.0	3.3	115
	Poplar 	39.2	13.1	1.8	0.9	-	14.7			116

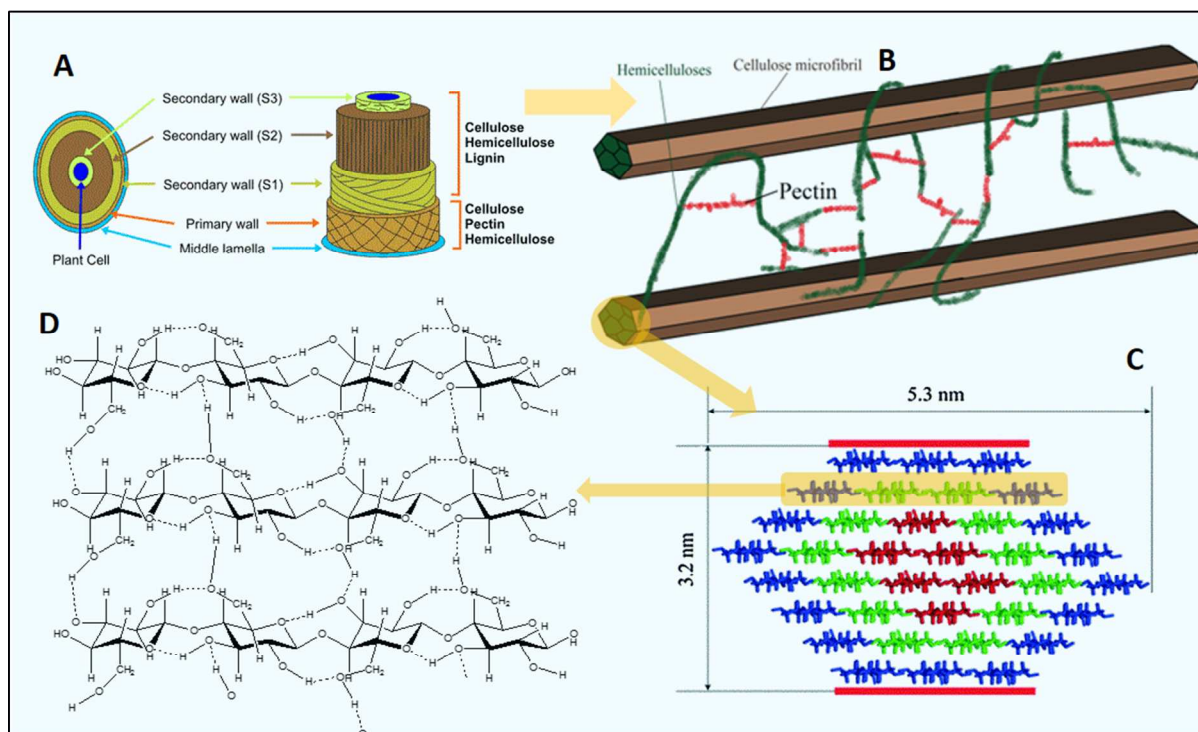
	Birch 	40.3	16.9	1.7	0.6	0.3	20.3			117
	Aspen wood 	49.0	14.9	2.0	0.5	0.8		24.6	1.0	118
	Elmwood 	43.6	20.3	1.5	1.2	-	26.3			119
Softwood	Douglas-wood chips 	47.3	4.4	11.7	2.2	1.2		29.8	0.5	120
	Pinewood 	38.2	8.5	11.3	4.3	-		29.5	4.9	121
	Spruce (sawdust) 	38.5	5.0	11.7	1.9	1.3	28.5			117
Agricultural residues and grasses	Switchgrass 	32.0	17.9	-	1.73	1.78	21.4			122
	Rice straw 	37.4	22.4	-	0.51	6.2		13.2	1.9	123
	Wheat straw 	38.8	22.2	1.7	2.7	1.4	18.5			124
	Energy cane bagasse 	40.87	20.82	-	-	1.53	24.81			125
	Corn stover 	35.3	23.9	-	1.9	4		19.2	0.7	126
	Sweet sorghum bagasse 	41.33	17.96	0.85	1.26	1.96		16.4	1.78	127

274 \*The carbohydrate contents were measured by analyzing the sugars released during a concentrated  
 275 sulfuric acid (72%) hydrolysis at 30°C followed by a dilute acid treatment at 121°C to cleave the

276 carbohydrates to monomeric sugars. Acid-insoluble lignin was measured gravimetrically after subtraction  
277 the ash content of final acid insoluble materials.<sup>128</sup>

278

279 Hemicellulose, the stereo-irregular polysaccharides, is a heterogeneous plant cell wall polymer  
280 composed of linear  $\beta(1,4)$ -D-glycan backbones branched with one monosaccharide and/or small  
281 oligosaccharides, with an approximate degree of polymerization of 200.<sup>129-131</sup> Unlike cellulose,  
282 hemicellulose has an amorphous, random, and branched structure, which is more susceptible to  
283 thermal, biological, and acid hydrolysis.<sup>132-135</sup> Xylan, mainly in the form of heteroxytan, is  
284 usually substituted with acetate and arabinose residues. It is the most abundant hemicellulose in  
285 nature, which dominantly contains  $\beta$ -D-xylopyranosyl residues linked by 1,4 glycosidic  
286 bonds.<sup>102,104</sup> Xylan content of plant cell wall may vary depending on the biomass type, ranging  
287 between 15–35% of total dry weight.<sup>102</sup> Hemicellulose interacts with cellulose and lignin and  
288 build a rigid network structure which is a barrier to enzyme-catalyzed deconstruction of  
289 cellulose.<sup>136</sup>



290

291 **Figure 5.** (A) Pictorial illustration of lignocellulosic biomass framework (modified from Menon and  
 292 Rao<sup>137</sup> with permission), (B) A simplified model showing the interaction of carbohydrate polymers present  
 293 in cell wall, modified from Himmel et al.,<sup>138</sup> (C) Structure of 36-chain model for cellulose I<sub>α</sub> or I<sub>β</sub>  
 294 elementary fibril (the reds show six true crystalline chains; greens are 12 subcrystalline chains with a  
 295 small degree of disorder; the blues are 18 surface chains that are subcrystalline with a large degree of  
 296 disorder, taken from ref. 111), and (D) A model of inter- and intra-chain hydrogen-bonding patterns in  
 297 cellulose, taken from ref. 139 with permission.

298

299 Pectin (pectic polysaccharides) is a heterogeneous polysaccharide with dominantly methyl  
 300 esterified or de-esterified homogalacturonan (HG) backbone. Located in the cell wall and middle  
 301 lamella of plants, pectin is the major component of the primary walls of several non-woody plant  
 302 cells.<sup>140,141</sup> After cellulose, pectin acts as a major plant load-bearing component and plays a  
 303 “glue” role to hold cell-wall components together.<sup>138,142-145</sup>

### 304 **3 Biomass recalcitrance and pretreatment**

305 Lynd et al.<sup>146</sup> first defined the “biomass recalcitrance” as the natural resistance of lignocelluloses  
306 and their components to microbial and enzymatic deconstruction. Later, Himmel et al.<sup>138</sup>  
307 summarized the factors contributing to the biomass recalcitrance as “(i) epidermal tissue of plant  
308 body, especially cuticle and epicuticular waxes, (ii) the arrangement and density of the vascular  
309 bundles, (iii) the relative amount of sclerenchymatous (thick wall) tissue, (iv) the degree of  
310 lignification, (v) the structural heterogeneity and complexity of cell-wall constituents such as  
311 microfibrils and matrix polymers, (vi) the challenges for enzymes acting on an insoluble  
312 substrate, and (vii) the inhibitors to subsequent fermentations that exist naturally in cell walls or  
313 are generated during conversion processes”. Due to the biomass inherent recalcitrance, the  
314 release of fermentable sugars via appropriate enzymatic hydrolysis as well as microbial  
315 hydrolysis is the bottleneck of the industrial lignocellulosic biorefineries.<sup>147,148</sup>

316 Therefore, an efficient pretreatment step is required to obtain the renewable chemicals and fuels  
317 from the lignocelluloses.<sup>149</sup> A suitable enzymatic or acid hydrolysis can then be applied to the  
318 pretreated substrates to convert them to fermentable sugars or AD process to obtain biogas.  
319 There are many reviews in the literature on pretreatment methods to enhance enzymatic  
320 digestibility of lignocellulosic feedstocks.<sup>11,69,136,150-157</sup> Pretreatment is a “physical”, “chemical”,  
321 “Physico-chemical”, or “biological” process, which can open up the lignocellulosic recalcitrance  
322 structure and make it amenable for subsequent enzymatic/microbial degradation. Physical  
323 pretreatments are divided into mechanical comminution and pyrolysis, whereas physicochemical  
324 pretreatments are steam explosion, ammonia fiber expansion (AFEX), and carbon dioxide  
325 explosion, and chemical pretreatments can be categorized into ozonolysis, acid hydrolysis,  
326 alkaline hydrolysis, oxidative delignification, and organosolv process.<sup>11,158</sup> The two most

327 commonly used technologies for pretreatment of lignocelluloses are dilute acid and alkaline  
328 pretreatments.<sup>159</sup> Dilute acid and alkaline pretreatments mainly target hemicellulose and lignin  
329 fractions, respectively, in lignocellulosic biomass. Acids like HCl and H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and bases like  
330 sodium hydroxide and sodium carbonate are mostly employed, and the pretreatment temperature,  
331 time, and acid/base concentration are among the main factors determining the effectiveness of  
332 pretreatment. An additional process and/or chemicals is required for recovering and neutralizing  
333 the hydrolysates and removing the inhibitory compounds for downstream processes.  
334 Hydrothermal pretreatment with only hot water, which is performed by using saturated steam at  
335 temperature and pressure below water critical point (subcritical water) or supercritical water, has  
336 the advantages of low amount of biological inhibitors production, minimal chemical cost, and  
337 relatively low cost of reactors compared with using acid or alkali solutions. A technology used  
338 for hydrothermal pretreatment, called steam explosion, is a pretreatment in which the  
339 lignocellulosic biomass is heated up by high-pressure steam (160–240 °C and pressures 0.7–4.8  
340 MPa) followed by an explosion decompression. Hemicelluloses are mostly hydrolyzed in this  
341 pretreatment via the reaction called “autohydrolysis”.<sup>160,161</sup>

342 For an advanced and low-cost pretreatment, several key criteria should be considered. It should  
343 be effective for a variety of lignocellulosic types with different characteristics. Significant sugar  
344 degradation products, formation of inhibitory byproduct for subsequent sugar fermentation, and  
345 production of waste residues should not be occurred during the pretreatment. Moreover, the  
346 pretreatment should need minimum heat and power requirement and reasonable size and  
347 moderate cost reactors.<sup>150,153,162</sup>

348 An efficient biomass pretreatment strategy should, therefore, be capable of effectively disrupting  
349 and removing the linkages among cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin present in the plant cell

350 walls. Furthermore, reordering or removing highly-ordered hydrogen bonds in cellulose fibers  
351 and subsequently increasing the porosity and surface area, resulting in cellulose accessibility to  
352 cellulase, are highly desirable traits of an effective pretreatment.<sup>150,153,162</sup>

353 Recently, a new pretreatment category based on cellulose solvent lignocellulosic fractionation,  
354 meeting the desired criteria, was added to the traditional biomass pretreatments. A number of  
355 low-toxic and mostly environmental friendly solvents, including N-methyl-morpholine-N-oxide  
356 (NMMO), ionic liquids (ILs), LiCl/N,N-dimethylacetamide (LiCl/DMAc), aqueous NaOH  
357 solution, alkali/urea and NaOH/thiourea aqueous solutions, tetra butyl ammonium  
358 fluoride/dimethyl sulfoxide system, metal complex solutions, concentrated phosphoric acid, and  
359 molten inorganic salt hydrates, have been introduced as cellulose solvents for regenerating  
360 cellulosic materials.<sup>163-165</sup> The cellulose solvents can be classified into (i) derivatizing, (ii) non-  
361 derivatizing, and (iii) aqueous and non-aqueous systems having the ability to eliminate the inter-  
362 and intra-molecular hydrogen bonds among cellulose molecules.<sup>166</sup> The cellulose can then be  
363 recovered using an anti-solvent such as water, ethanol, or acetone. The parallel arrangement of  
364 cellulose I, in most regenerated celluloses, is irreversibly converted into an anti-parallel  
365 orientation, cellulose II, which is much easier to hydrolyze using cellulases.<sup>167</sup> Cellulose II is  
366 thermodynamically more stable and has a more dense packing structure than cellulose I.<sup>168</sup>  
367 However, as examined by Wada et al.,<sup>169</sup> the hydrolysis of cellulose II (and especially its hydrate  
368 form) proceeds faster than the hydrolysis of cellulose I. Changes in polarity, crystallinity, and  
369 ultrastructure of cellulose I to cellulose II have been reported to be the factors responsible for  
370 cellulose II faster hydrolysis.<sup>167</sup>

371

372 While some of the traditional pretreatments suffer from relatively low sugars yield, require  
373 severe reaction conditions (high temperature and/or high pressure), and result in the formation of  
374 fermentation inhibitory compounds, the cellulose solvent-based pretreatments can be performed  
375 under relatively mild conditions (100–160°C), resulting into insignificant amount of inhibitors  
376 from degradation of cellulose and hemicelluloses.<sup>170,171</sup> The cellulose solvent-based  
377 fractionations are regarded as a biomass-independent, or feedstock agnostics, pretreatments,  
378 which can break recalcitrant structure of biomass by increasing cellulose accessibility more than  
379 the traditional pretreatments.<sup>172</sup> The recovery of non-fermentable co-products, e.g., pure and  
380 unaltered lignin, in these methods, adds revenue streams to the fermentation products.<sup>173,174</sup> The  
381 use of cellulose solvents over traditional solvent systems, which are typically (e.g., ethanol)  
382 volatile, for biomass pretreatment is promising in the future of lignocellulosic biorefineries.

383 This review paper has mainly focused on the most promising cellulose solvent-based  
384 pretreatment, i.e., concentrated phosphoric acid (CPA), N-methyl-morpholine-N-oxide (NMMO,  
385 or NMO), and ionic liquids (ILs). Although a few other reviews are available in the  
386 literature,<sup>172,175-186</sup> this review is intended to be a comprehensive review, with focus on recent  
387 research on cellulose solvent-based pretreatment to improve the reactivity of lignocelluloses for  
388 biogas, ethanol, and renewable chemicals production. Furthermore, as the pretreatment is a  
389 preceding step to the microbial conversion mediated with enzymes, the basic concepts and the  
390 limiting factors in the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses are also briefly reviewed.

#### 391 **4 Hydrolysis of pretreated lignocellulosic substrate**

392 The hydrolysis of lignocelluloses has long been done by dilute and concentrated acids, e.g.,  
393 sulfuric acid.<sup>187,188</sup> The main drawback of acid hydrolysis is degradation of sugars and formation



394 of byproducts that showed severe inhibition to the fermentation microorganisms. High  
395 investments and maintenance cost, high utility and disposal costs, high energy consumption for  
396 acid recovery, and environmental impacts are among the major disadvantages of acid  
397 hydrolysis.<sup>189</sup> Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials by “enzymatic” processes has emerged a  
398 prominent process for the production of monomeric sugars, e.g., for subsequent production of  
399 fuel ethanol.<sup>190,191</sup> Cellulases and hemicellulases are the two enzymes typically used for  
400 depolymerization of lignocellulosic carbohydrates to fermentable sugars for second-generation  
401 biofuel production. Although a lot of efforts have been made to reduce the production costs, the  
402 enzymes are still expensive.<sup>192,193</sup>

403 Cellulose can be hydrolyzed by three glycoside hydrolases: endo-1,4- $\beta$ -D-glucanases (EG) (EC  
404 3.2.1.4), which randomly hydrolyze internal  $\beta$ -1,4-glycosidic bonds in the cellulose microfibril;  
405 exo-1,4- $\beta$ -D-glucanases or cellobiohydrolases I and II (CBH) (EC 3.2.1.91), which progressively  
406 convert cellulose into cellodextrins; and 1,4- $\beta$ -D-glucosidases (EC 3.2.1.21), which hydrolyze  
407 cellobiose and cellodextrins to glucose.<sup>139,194-196</sup> In a synergistic mixture, cellulases have higher  
408 combined activities than the sum of their individual activities.<sup>197</sup> Cellulases typically have two  
409 separate domains: a catalytic domain (CD) and a cellulose binding module (CBM), comprised of  
410 approximately 35 amino acids, linked by a flexible linker region.<sup>198</sup> Over the years, several  
411 kinetics models for lignocellulosic biomass hydrolysis by cellulase have been proposed and  
412 developed<sup>199-201</sup> to understand the mechanisms. For example, recently a comprehensive model  
413 was developed by Bansal et al.<sup>202</sup> that included the following steps: (i) adsorption of cellulases  
414 onto the substrate via the binding domain, (ii) direction of cellulases to a bond (located on the  
415 chain end or cleavable bond) susceptible to hydrolysis on the substrate surface, (iii) formation of  
416 enzyme–substrate complex, (iv) hydrolysis of the  $\beta$ -glycosidic bond and simultaneous direction

417 of the enzyme to the cellulose chain, (v) desorption of cellulases from the substrate or repetition  
418 of step iv or steps ii/iii if only the catalytic domain detaches from chain, and (vi) hydrolysis of  
419 cellobiose to glucose by  $\beta$ -glucosidase (if available in the enzyme mixture). However, the exact  
420 mechanism of cellulose hydrolysis mediated by fungal cellulases is still unknown as the binding  
421 mechanism of binding module to cellulose, catalytic action of cellulase, and stimulation of  
422 cellulose hydrolysis by CBMs are still not clearly understood.<sup>203</sup>

423 The catalytic domains in cellulase are connected to one or more CBMs by peptides linker of  
424 varying length and structure.<sup>139,204</sup> CBMs, with high binding affinity, increase the interaction  
425 between cellulase and cellulose surface and enhance enzyme penetration into the  
426 substrates.<sup>139,205,206</sup> Several synergistic proteins, e.g., plant expansins and expansin-like proteins  
427 such as swollenin,<sup>207</sup> and auxiliary activity family 9 (formerly GH61) proteins,<sup>208,209</sup> are able to  
428 enhance the enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose by cellulase in ways that are not yet clearly  
429 understood.<sup>210</sup>

430 Hemicellulases refer to a diverse combination of enzymes that can synergistically hydrolyze  
431 hemicellulose from mixed sources and are divided into two major categories: depolymerases and  
432 debranching enzymes (accessory enzymes).<sup>195,211</sup> The former group is either endo-acting  
433 enzymes, that attack polymer chains internally, or exo-acting enzymes that act processively<sup>207</sup>  
434 from the reducing or non-reducing terminals.<sup>213</sup> Depolymerases mainly include xylanases,  
435 mannanases,  $\beta$ -glucanases, and xyloglucanases, and debranching enzymes are  $\alpha$ -glucuronidase,  
436  $\alpha$ -arabinofuranosidase,  $\alpha$ -D-galactosidase, acetyl xylan esterase, and ferulic acid esterase.<sup>211,214</sup>

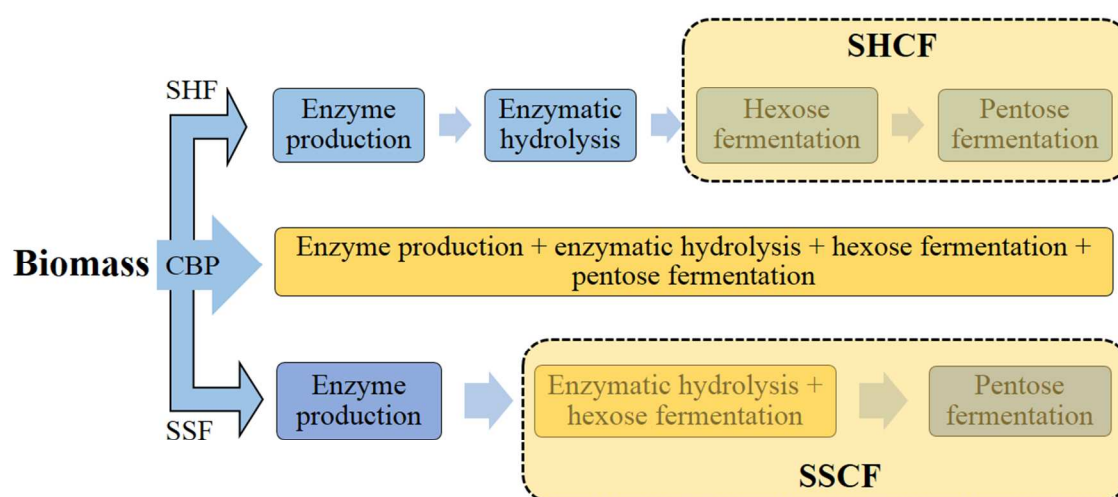
437 Várnai et al.<sup>215</sup> reported that synergistic action of xylanase and mannanase can improve the total  
438 hydrolysis of pretreated softwood. Synergism is defined as “the ratio of the rate or yield of  
439 product released by enzymes when used together to the sum of the rate or yield of these products

440 when the enzymes are used separately in the same amounts as they were employed in the  
441 mixture".<sup>216</sup> It depends on both the ratio of the enzymes involved and characteristics of enzymes  
442 and substrate.<sup>102</sup> Synergism, as reviewed by Van Dyk and Pletschke,<sup>102</sup> can be grouped into  
443 cellulase components interaction, as mentioned earlier, hemicellulases interaction, and combined  
444 enzymes on complex substrates.

445 For degradation of lignocelluloses, many aerobic bacteria and fungi, e.g., *Acidothermus*  
446 *cellulolyticus*, *Trichoderma reesei*, and *Aspergillus niger*, produce free enzymes. Nonetheless,  
447 some anaerobic bacteria from genera of *Clostridium*, *Acetivibrio*, *Bacteriodes*, and *Ruminicoccus*  
448 are capable of producing multi-enzyme extracellular protein complexes, called cellulosomes,  
449 which can degrade cellulose, hemicellulose, and pectin.<sup>102,139,198,205,217</sup> The most important  
450 characteristic difference between cellulosomes and free enzyme is cohesion-containing  
451 scaffoldin(s) and the dockerin-containing enzymes (hemicellulases, cellulases, and  
452 pectinases).<sup>218,219</sup> Besides, free non-cellulosomal enzymes usually contain a CBM that attach to  
453 the substrate. The structure and function of cellulosomes and their differences with free enzymes  
454 have been reviewed by Bayer et al.<sup>220</sup>

455 The enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation can be conventionally performed by separate  
456 enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation (SHF) or via an integrated process, i.e., simultaneous  
457 saccharification and fermentation (SSF), non-isothermal simultaneous saccharification and  
458 fermentation (NSSF), simultaneous saccharification, filtration, and fermentation (SSFF), or  
459 simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation (SSCF)<sup>221</sup> (Figure 6). Although a recent study  
460 reported higher ethanol yield by SHF over SSF at very high solids concentration by using newly  
461 preparations of a cellulolytic enzyme, Cellic® CTec2,<sup>222</sup> the integrated approaches were  
462 developed to enhance the overall ethanol yield by reducing the inhibitory effect of sugar released

463 during the hydrolysis process on enzymes.<sup>223</sup> Another approach, called consolidated  
 464 bioprocessing (CBP), can convert biomass to biofuel by using anaerobic bacteria capable of  
 465 producing cellulose enzymes with high activity and ferment the resulting sugars to, e.g.,  
 466 ethanol, in a single step.<sup>192,203,219</sup> Although CBP is more effective process than the others;  
 467 however, it is in the developing stage and further developments in metabolic and genetic  
 468 engineering are required to meet the industrial requirements.



469

470 **Figure 6.** Different strategies for hydrolysis and fermentation of lignocellulosic substrates (SHF: separate  
 471 hydrolysis and fermentation; SSF: simultaneous saccharification and fermentation; CBP: consolidated  
 472 bioprocessing; SHCF: separate hydrolysis and co-fermentation; and SSCF: simultaneous saccharification  
 473 and co-fermentation)

474

475 Commercial enzymes are usually a cellulase mixture derived from fungi such as *T. reesei*  
 476 supplemented with  $\beta$ -glucosidase and contain more than 80 proteins.<sup>195,224</sup> Novozymes is one of  
 477 the companies that provides enzymes for process optimization and commercialization of  
 478 cellulosic ethanol. In this regard, the company started a dedicated work in 2000, under a national  
 479 renewable energy laboratory (NREL) subcontract funded by the United States Department of  
 480 Energy (DOE), to reduce the cost of cellulases.<sup>203</sup> In 2007, the company estimated 40-100 times

481 higher cost for the hydrolytic cellulase enzyme than the cost of enzymes for starch hydrolysis to  
482 glucose on a per gallon ethanol basis.<sup>157</sup> The outcome of the work was Cellic CTec & Cellic  
483 HTec enzymes cocktails in March 2009 followed by an improved and cost-effective product,  
484 Cellic® CTec2, in February 2010, and the company reported a 35% lower enzyme price. The  
485 company then developed a new generation of enzyme, called Cellic® CTec3, with 1.5 times  
486 better performance than the previous best product in the market. Cellic® CTec3 has been shown  
487 to work across a variety of feedstocks with consumption of approximately 50 kg of Cellic®  
488 CTec3 to produce 1 ton of ethanol (<http://www.novozymes.com/>). The cellulase assays usually  
489 measure the production of reducing sugars from high molecular weight cellulose,<sup>225</sup> like  
490 Whatman 1 filter paper, as first developed by Ghose<sup>226</sup> and later adopted and modified by  
491 NREL.<sup>227</sup> Protein content of the enzymes is also of great interests, which is usually measured by  
492 Bradford assay,<sup>228</sup> Pierce BCA assay,<sup>229</sup> and total crude protein by Kjeldahl nitrogen analysis.<sup>230</sup>  
493 Equivalent glucose yield, proposed by the NREL, as % of theoretical yield (% cellulose or  
494 glucan digestibility) is usually calculated by using the equation 1:

$$495 \quad Yield (\%) = \frac{[Glucose] + 1.053[Cellobiose]}{1.111 f [Biomass]} \times 100 \quad (1)$$

496 where [Glucose] is the concentration of glucose (g/L), [Cellobiose], cellobiose concentration  
497 (g/L), [Biomass], biomass concentration dry basis at the beginning of the enzymatic hydrolysis  
498 (g/L), and f is cellulose fraction in the biomass on dry basis (g/g).<sup>231</sup>

## 499 **5 Obstacles in the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses and the role of pretreatment**

500 The enzymatic hydrolysis performance of lignocelluloses is affected by not only cellulolytic  
501 enzyme-related factors (discussed in Section 4) but also by the physical, chemical, and

502 morphological characteristics of the lignocellulosic materials.<sup>151,232-234</sup> Cellulose crystallinity,  
503 structure, degree of polymerization (DP), accessibility, as well as hemicellulose and lignin  
504 contents are among the main structural and physicochemical features of cellulosic substrates that  
505 control the rate and extent of enzymatic hydrolysis.<sup>113,235-238</sup> Among all the factors that control  
506 cellulose hydrolysis mediated with fungal enzymes and to an extent, with cellulolytic such as  
507 *Clostridium thermocellum* and other microbes, cellulose accessibility to enzymes/microbes is  
508 believed to be the main factor affecting cellulose deconstruction.<sup>113,172,239,240</sup> However, tracking  
509 only one factor governing biological conversion is practically impossible because increase in  
510 cellulose accessibility in biomass is usually accompanied by hemicellulose and lignin removal  
511 and/or reduction in cellulose crystallinity.

## 512 **5.1 Cellulose crystallinity and degree of polymerization (DP)**

513 The cellulose microfibrils exist in different polymorphs, i.e., crystalline, paracrystalline  
514 (disordered), and amorphous structures. Amorphous cellulose is much easier to hydrolyze than  
515 crystalline cellulose.<sup>241</sup> One of the major obstacle for efficient hydrolysis of cellulose mediated  
516 with fungal enzymes is cellulose crystalline structure since lignin- and hemicellulose-free  
517 substrates, e.g., cotton fibers, still show resistance to enzymatic degradation.<sup>242</sup> However, based  
518 on findings in the literature, the correlation between cellulose crystallinity and enzymatic  
519 hydrolysis rate and yield is still debatable.<sup>243-247</sup> Although cellulose accessibility and enzyme  
520 adsorption can be affected by cellulose crystallinity; however, lignin/hemicellulose contents and  
521 distribution, biomass porosity, and biomass particle size can also affect the accessibility.<sup>243</sup>  
522 Besides, some reports have stated a constant crystallinity for cellulose during the course of  
523 hydrolysis;<sup>244</sup> while others reported a decrease in cellulose crystallinity during hydrolysis.<sup>245</sup>

524 Reported by Hall et al.,<sup>246</sup> at constant adsorbed enzyme concentration, crystallinity was found to  
525 be a more influencing factor for enzymatic hydrolysis rates than enzymes adsorption. Mittal et  
526 al.<sup>247</sup> have found a strong correlation between initial rate of digestion (up to 24 hours) and  
527 amorphous content for four cellulose samples with different degrees of polymerization and  
528 crystallinity indexes, which were subjected to aqueous sodium hydroxide and anhydrous liquid  
529 ammonia treatments. Besides, they reported a weak correlation of allomorph type with initial  
530 digestibility; however, a strong correlation with cellulose conversion was found at later  
531 hydrolysis times. Cui et al.<sup>248</sup> prepared four types of cellulose allomorphs from  $\alpha$ -cellulose and  
532 concluded that the amorphous content had a strong positive influence on cellulose digestibility.  
533 The allomorphs digestibility was reported to be in the following order: cellulose III > cellulose II  
534 > cellulose I $_{\alpha}$  > cellulose I $_{\beta}$ . In contrast, the crystalline polymorph of cellulose was reported to  
535 have a negligible influence on the conversion degree of non-dried and dried cellulose samples  
536 into glucose.<sup>249</sup> Finally, cellulose crystallinity can affect the synergism among cellulase  
537 components and the cellulase processivity, which has a notable effect on the hydrolysis.<sup>241</sup>

538 The crystallinity index measurements are highly dependent on the technique applied, i.e., Fourier  
539 transform infrared spectroscopy (FTIR), X-ray diffraction (XRD), Nuclear Magnetic Resonance  
540 (NMR) Spectroscopy, and Raman spectroscopy, and also the methods used for calculating  
541 crystallinity index from the raw spectrographic data.<sup>204,242</sup> Cellulose crystallinity index (CrI)  
542 from XRD spectra has long been calculated by different calculation approaches.<sup>243</sup> The most  
543 frequent and simple calculation technique is based on peak height according to the empirical  
544 method of Segal et al.<sup>250</sup> for native cellulose:

$$545 \quad CrI (\%) = [(I_{002} - I_{am}) / I_{002}] \times 100 \quad (2)$$

546 where  $I_{002}$  is the maximum intensity of the 002 lattice diffraction at  $2\theta = 22.4^\circ$  and  $I_{am}$  is the  
547 diffraction intensity at  $2\theta = 18^\circ$ . However, the Segal's crystallinity method does not reflect the  
548 crystal sizes for a given polymorph, e.g., the two cellulose polymorphs,  $I_\beta$  and II, were calculated  
549 to have different CrIs despite having the same crystal sizes.<sup>251</sup>

550 Degree of polymerization (DP) of cellulose is the number of glucose units in the cellulose  
551 molecule chain and varies between 6,000 in primary cell wall and up to 14,000 in secondary cell  
552 wall.<sup>252</sup> The DP of cellulose is believed to contribute to the enzymatic hydrolysis of  
553 lignocelluloses since long cellulose chain has more hydrogen bonds, while shorter chains has  
554 more cellulose ends available to the exoglucanases.<sup>253</sup>

555 However, tracking changes in DP of cellulose, especially for complex lignocelluloses, during the  
556 course of pretreatment cannot be easily assayed. A method developed by Zhang and Lynd<sup>254</sup> is  
557 only applicable for pure cellulosic substrates. Besides, DP is not typically an independent factor  
558 influencing cellulose digestibility because altering DP is always accompanied by crystallinity  
559 changes.<sup>148,255</sup>

## 560 **5.2 Cellulose accessibility to cellulases**

561 One of the primary barriers for cellulase enzymes in the hydrolysis of lignocellulose is their  
562 limited access to much of the cellulose confined in a highly packed structure.<sup>256</sup> The presence of  
563 lignin significantly decreases the swelling/accessibility of cellulose resulting in low sugar yields  
564 at commercially viable low enzyme loading.<sup>120</sup> Arantes and Saddler<sup>257</sup> found that the required  
565 protein loading to achieve efficient hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates, regardless of their  
566 source, structure, and type of pretreatment, had a strong linear dependency on the cellulose  
567 accessibility for each substrate. Biomass porosity is considered as lignocellulosic interior surface



568 area and exterior surface area that is largely determined by particle size.<sup>258</sup> The accessible pore  
569 sizes required for anaerobes and cellulase and hemicellulases enzymes were reported to be at  
570 least 0.2-20  $\mu\text{m}$  and 40-60 nm width, respectively, to allow sufficient penetration.<sup>253</sup> Wiman et  
571 al.<sup>259</sup> correlated the higher rate of enzymatic hydrolysis, in spite of the negative effect of lignin  
572 accumulation on the particle surface, to the increase in specific surface area. Rollin et al.<sup>240</sup> also  
573 showed that increasing cellulose accessibility is more important than removing lignin in the  
574 enzymatic hydrolysis of pretreated substrates, while removing lignin increases the accessibility  
575 of hemicelluloses which in turn affects cellulose accessibility.<sup>260</sup> Similar to cellulose  
576 crystallinity, a strong relationship was observed between accessible cellulose surface and degree  
577 of synergistic action of cellulase components, which is crucial to enhance hydrolysis  
578 efficiency.<sup>261</sup>

### 579 5.2.1 Cellulase adsorption

580 The rate-limiting step in enzymatic saccharification is the amount of protein adsorbed on the  
581 substrate during enzymatic hydrolysis. The rate of saccharification increases with increasing  
582 enzyme concentration up to a plateau, typically corresponding to the maximum capacity of  
583 substrate to adsorb enzyme.<sup>262,263</sup> Decrease in hydrolysis rates with reaction is believed to be  
584 mainly due to reduced enzyme adsorption and accessibility to the substrate.<sup>264</sup> The adsorption  
585 parameters (maximum adsorption capacity  $[\sigma]$  and equilibrium constant  $[K_d]$ ) are usually  
586 determined by fitting the cellulase adsorption data to Langmuir equation by non-linear  
587 regression:

$$588 \quad [CE] = \frac{\sigma[E_f]}{K_d + [E_f]} \quad (3)$$

589 where  $[CE]$  is the amount of adsorbed enzyme in mg/g substrate,  $[E_f]$  is the free enzyme  
590 concentration in mg/mL,  $\sigma$  is the maximum adsorption capacity in mg/mg substrate, and  $K_d$  is the  
591 equilibrium constant in mg enzyme/mL.<sup>260</sup>

592 The concentration of free enzymes is measured either directly by analyzing adsorbed protein on  
593 substrate or calculated as the difference between the total amount of protein initially added and  
594 the amount left in aqueous solution at any time.<sup>262,265-267</sup> The enzymes were reported to adsorb  
595 quickly in the initial stage and remain attached throughout hydrolysis.<sup>268</sup> For instance,  
596 equilibrium time for cellulase on pretreated sugarcane bagasse was approximately 120 min and  
597 was even shorter for Avicel (10 min), while  $\beta$ -glucosidase (from *A. niger*) was not significantly  
598 adsorbed.<sup>269</sup>

### 599 **5.3 Hemicellulose content**

600 Hemicelluloses, a physical barrier around cellulose, can retard the enzymatic hydrolysis by  
601 precluding the access of enzymes to cellulose (Section 5.2) and inhibiting the endoglucanase and  
602 cellobiohydrolase activity.<sup>270,271</sup> The presence of xylan is believed to limit the cellulose  
603 hydrolysability, as evident by slow digestion of delignified substrates compared to pure  
604 cellulose.<sup>272,273</sup> Although it is commonly found in pulp and paper industry that xylan and other  
605 hemicelluloses adsorb on cellulose and enhance pulp strength, Kumar et al.<sup>274</sup> recently showed  
606 that hemicelluloses adsorption and their strong association with cellulose during pretreatments  
607 can retard cellulose digestion significantly; however, supplementation of xylanase to cellulase  
608 was shown to relieve the inhibition. In other report, Wang et al.<sup>275</sup> also reported that the re-  
609 adsorption of dissolved xylan, produced during the pretreatment, on cellulose can inhibit the  
610 cellulose hydrolysis by cellulases. The supplementation of cellulases by xylanase was suggested  
611 to hydrolyze the xylan adsorbed on cellulose and potentially improved the hydrolysis efficiency

612 of lignocelluloses. As discussed earlier (Section 4), the supplementation of xylanase has been  
613 also reported to synergistically improve the performance of cellulases in the hydrolysis of  
614 lignocelluloses.<sup>216,276-278</sup> Nonetheless, hemicellulases supplementation to cellulase not only  
615 enhances cellulose accessibility to cellulase by simultaneously removing structural/non-structural  
616 hemicelluloses but also depolymerize shorter hemicellulose oligomers in the solution that have  
617 been shown to be strongly inhibitory to cellulases by Kumar and Wyman and others.<sup>279-284</sup> On  
618 the other hand, negative effect of xylose accumulation on cellulase cocktails was also  
619 observed.<sup>285</sup> Partial removal of hemicelluloses by concentrated NaOH was reported to be more  
620 effective than complete removal for poplar, and a maximum enzymatic hydrolysis of 94.6 % was  
621 achieved.<sup>285</sup> More information on the inhibitory effects of sugars and oligomers on the enzymatic  
622 hydrolysis is provided in Section 5.5.

#### 623 **5.4 Lignin content**

624 In general, lignin plays a negative role in the biochemical processes for producing lignocellulosic  
625 biofuels.<sup>286,287,288,289</sup> Nonetheless, Nakagame et al.<sup>290</sup> concluded that an increase in the carboxylic  
626 content of lignin resulted in a decrease in non-productive binding of cellulase and consequently  
627 an increase in hydrolysis yield. A slight enhancement in enzymatic hydrolysis was also reported  
628 by Wang et al.<sup>291</sup> by adding Kraft lignin to the enzymatic hydrolysates. Lai et al.<sup>292</sup> reported  
629 contrasting results for the effect of ethanol organosolv lignin on enzymatic hydrolysis. They  
630 found that the addition of 8 g/L hardwood organosolv lignin significantly improved the  
631 enzymatic yield of organosolv pretreated sweetgum and loblolly pine, while addition of  
632 softwood organosolv lignin was shown to decrease the yields.

633 Lignin can retard enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses via three mechanisms: 1) enzymes can  
634 be adsorbed on lignin through hydrophobic interactions, electrostatic interactions, and/or

635 hydrogen-bonding interactions, 2) lignin in lignocellulosic materials acts as a surface barrier to  
636 block the accessible surface of carbohydrates through physical blockage on the surface and  
637 chemical blockage through lignin-carbohydrate complex, and 3) enzymes deactivation by soluble  
638 lignin.<sup>293,294</sup>

639 Öhgren et al.<sup>278</sup> evaluated the effects of partial delignification of corn stover by acid-catalyzed or  
640 autocatalysis pretreatment to increase the enzymatic hydrolysis yield. Due to the delignification,  
641 a slight increase in glucose yield and a decrease in xylose yield due to hemicellulose loss were  
642 observed. Várnai et al.<sup>272</sup> concluded that the limitation in the enzymatic hydrolysis of spruce was  
643 mainly due to the presence of lignin, since the removal of lignin with chlorite delignification  
644 doubled the hydrolysis yield with near theoretical yield within 2 days. Nlewem et al.<sup>295</sup>  
645 performed alkali, dilute acid, and hot water pretreatments on switchgrass and compared its  
646 enzymatic hydrolysability. Although it was not only due to delignification, the alkali  
647 pretreatment generally produced glucose in higher concentrations than the others, since it caused  
648 higher reduction in lignin content and lots of pores were formed by the pretreatment. In another  
649 study, fungal delignification of wet milled rice straw by *Trichoderma viride* in the presence of a  
650 surfactant for 30 days resulted in 74% of lignin removal and 56% of enzymatic  
651 saccharification.<sup>296</sup>

#### 652 5.4.1 Adsorption of cellulases on lignin

653 The non-productive cellulase adsorption onto lignin is believed to associate with the inhibitory  
654 effect of lignin on the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic feedstocks.<sup>297-299</sup> Both raw  
655 softwood lignin and isolated lignin from steam pretreated softwood were reported to adsorb  
656 major commercial *T. reesei* cellulases (Celluclast) and inhibit the hydrolysis of Avicel.<sup>300</sup>  
657 Composition and functional groups of lignin, e.g., syringyl/guaiacyl lignin ratio, carboxylic acid,

658 aliphatic hydroxyl, and phenolic hydroxyl, were reported to affect the enzyme adsorption.<sup>301</sup>  
659 Lignin adsorbed the enzymes in the following order: cellobiohydrolases (CBHs) and xylanase >  
660 endoglucanase (EG) >  $\beta$ -glucosidase (BG). In contrast, Ko et al.<sup>302</sup> reported that  $\beta$ -glucosidase  
661 from *T. reesei* had the strongest adsorption onto lignin and only 2–18% of the initial  $\beta$ -  
662 glucosidase activity remained in the supernatant, while 50–60% of cellobiohydrolase and  
663 endoglucanase activities were recovered after incubation with lignin. However, they stated that  
664  $\beta$ -glucosidase from *A. niger* exhibits less adsorption than that from *T. reesei*. Rahikainen et al.<sup>303</sup>  
665 prepared lignin films from steam explosion pretreated and untreated spruce and wheat straw and  
666 compared their capacity to adsorb cellulases. The pretreated biomass film showed higher  
667 capacity to adsorb the major cellulase Cel7A of *T. reesei* than the untreated biomass. Yu et al.<sup>293</sup>  
668 also showed that the lignin obtained from pretreated woods resulted in two to six times more  
669 cellulase adsorption than untreated woods. The degree of lignin condensation after pretreatment,  
670 which significantly increased especially for softwoods, has a critical impact on cellulase  
671 adsorption and enzymatic hydrolysis.<sup>293</sup>

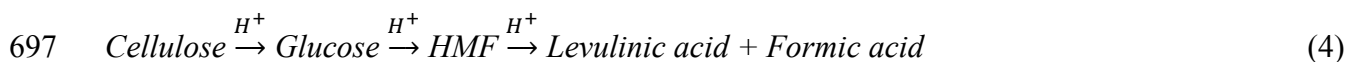
#### 672 5.4.2 Lignin-derived phenolic compounds

673 Lignin-derived phenolic compounds, e.g., vanillin, syringaldehyde, trans-cinnamic acid, and  
674 hydroxybenzoic acid, generally produced during pretreatment inhibit cellulase (endo- and exo-  
675 cellulases and  $\beta$ -glucosidase) as well as fermentative microorganisms.<sup>304-307</sup> The enzymes  
676 deactivate and precipitate with vanillin, where a 10 mg/mL vanillin concentration was reported  
677 to decrease cellulose conversion from 53% to 26%.<sup>304</sup> Structure of the phenolic compounds, e.g.,  
678 presence of hydroxyl, carbonyl, and methoxy groups, can affect the inhibition. Li et al.<sup>308</sup>  
679 reported that aldehyde and phenolic hydroxyl groups of vanillin have inhibitory effects on  
680 cellulase. However,  $\beta$ -glucosidases from *T. reesei* and *A. niger* are less susceptible to inhibition

681 and correspondingly require approximately 10 and 100 times higher concentrations of phenols  
682 for the same levels of inhibition as cellulase components.<sup>305</sup> Oliva-Taravilla et al.<sup>309</sup> showed that  
683 the addition of laccases was able to remove the phenolic compounds from steam-pretreated  
684 lignocellulosic materials; however, application of laccases reduced glucose yield during  
685 hydrolysis. They concluded that the proportion of lignin besides the composition of phenols are  
686 key factors in the cellulase inhibition when the enzymatic hydrolysis is combined with laccases  
687 detoxification.

### 688 **5.5 Formation of inhibitory byproducts**

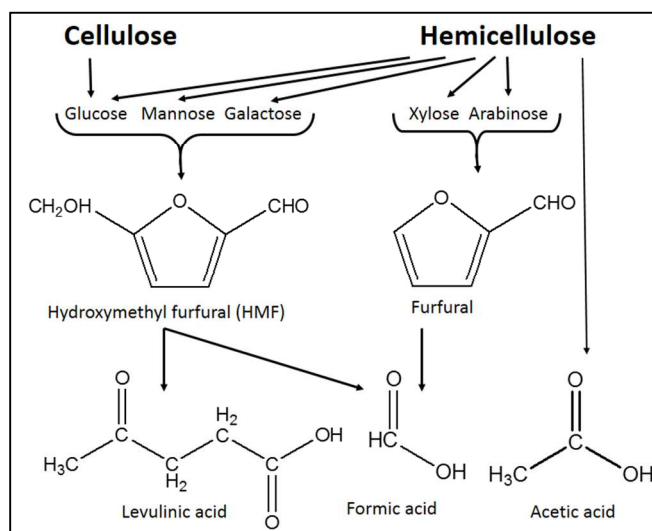
689 Besides hemicellulose and lignin-derived compounds, some inhibitory byproducts produced  
690 during pretreatment, e.g., furan aldehydes, weak acids, and hydrolysis-derived substances like  
691 soluble mono/oligomeric sugars (Section 5.3), hamper the performance of cellulases and  
692 fermentable organisms.<sup>307,310,311</sup> Furan aldehydes, i.e., furfural and 5-hydroxymethylfurfural  
693 (HMF), are formed by dehydration of pentose and hexose sugars, respectively<sup>312,313</sup> (Figure 7).  
694 By the release of acetic acid during pretreatment, mainly by hydrolysis of acetyl group, or by re-  
695 hydrolysis, furan aldehydes can be converted to weak acids such as levulinic acid and formic  
696 acid (Eq. 4).<sup>314-316</sup>



698 Formation of inhibitory byproducts during pretreatment is strongly dependent on feedstock and  
699 pretreatment type applied. For example, agricultural residues and hardwoods with higher  
700 amounts of acetylated xylan generate higher concentration of acetic acid during pretreatment.  
701 Most of the pretreatments under severe conditions, such as long reaction time and high  
702 temperature, result in the formation of inhibitory by-products. In acid-catalyzed thermochemical

703 pretreatment process, dehydration of pentose sugars and uronic acid result in inhibitory  
 704 byproducts (Figure 7). In addition, the splitting of lignin's  $\beta$ -O-4 ether and other acid labile  
 705 linkages forms phenolic and non-phenolic aromatic inhibitory compounds. However, formation  
 706 of carboxylic acid by peeling-off reaction takes place in alkaline conditions<sup>307,311</sup>.

707



708

709 **Figure 7.** Formation of major inhibitory by-products from main carbohydrates present in lignocelluloses  
 710 (modified from Reginatto et al.<sup>317</sup>).

711

712 Jing et al.<sup>318</sup> compared the inhibitory effect of the major lignocellulose degradation products on  
 713 Spezyme®CP cellulase with the following order: lignin derivatives > furan derivatives > organic  
 714 acids > ethanol. Arora et al.<sup>319</sup> reported a severe inhibition by formic acid (5 or 10 mg/mL) on  
 715 enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose powder as well as dilute acid-pretreated poplar.

716 Xiao et al.<sup>320</sup> quantitatively calculated the inhibitory effect of sugars on cellulase and  $\beta$ -  
 717 glucosidase during enzymatic hydrolysis of softwood substrates and showed a dramatic increase  
 718 in both enzymes inhibition by increasing glucose concentration. They also reported the

719 significant inhibitory effect of mannose, xylose, and galactose during the hydrolysis on cellulase  
720 activity but not on  $\beta$ -glucosidase activity. Xylooligomers (XOs), especially at high  
721 concentrations, were reported to have more inhibitory effect than xylan and xylose in decreasing  
722 the initial hydrolysis rate and final glucose yield of Avicel.<sup>280,284</sup> Addition of xylanase and  $\beta$ -  
723 xylosidase was recommended to reduce xylooligomers and xylan inhibition of enzymatic  
724 hydrolysis of pretreated corn stover.<sup>321</sup> In a recent study, Kumar and Wyman<sup>279</sup> revealed that  
725 mannan polysaccharides and their enzymatically derived oligomers were more inhibitory to  
726 cellulase than XOs and cellobiose. They also showed that cellulase inhibition dramatically  
727 increased with mannan backbone substitution with galactose. However, the amount of mannan  
728 re-adsorption on cellulose after pretreatment was reported to be higher than that of glucomannan  
729 and galactomannan at the same concentrations.<sup>322</sup> In a recent study, Cellic® CTec3 enzyme  
730 mixture was reported to be more resistant than Celluclast 1.5L cellulase to the inhibitory  
731 compounds produced during steam pretreatment of poplar and lodgepole pine.<sup>323</sup> Furthermore,  
732 monomeric sugars were shown to have more inhibitory effects than phenolics, depending upon  
733 their types, and oligomeric sugars.

734 It is notable that the discussed byproducts also have inhibitory effects on the bioconversion  
735 routes leading to biofuels and renewable chemicals production. For example, the concentration  
736 of furfural and HMF in the range of 0.5-1 g/L and formic and acetic acids at more than 4 g/L  
737 were reported to be toxic in batch lactic acid fermentation by *Rhizopus oryzae*.<sup>324</sup> For a  
738 recombinant *S. cerevisiae* strain, initial furfural concentrations below 5 g/L was reported to have  
739 negligible effect on ethanolic fermentation in a xylose and glucose containing medium, while  
740 xylose consumption rates were affected at initial furfural concentrations of 10–15 g/L.<sup>325</sup>



## 741 6 Concentrated phosphoric acid pretreatment

742 Phosphoric acid (85%) was first recognized as a swelling agent to produce reactive cellulose  
743 from air dried cellulose by Walseth<sup>326</sup> in 1950s. Since then, phosphoric acid swollen cellulose  
744 (PASC) has been the subject of vast studies as cellulose substrate for cellulase activity assays  
745 and preparation of microcrystalline cellulose.<sup>327-329</sup> Bellamy and Holub<sup>330</sup> patented a process  
746 using CPA (80–85%) for decrystallization of cellulose to improve its hydrolysis. The process  
747 included formation of a gel by mixing cotton and wood pulp with CPA at room temperature  
748 followed by acid removal from the cellulosic substrate by water washing. Zhang et al.,<sup>331</sup>  
749 however, observed cellulose dissolution behavior when the phosphoric acid concentration  
750 reached greater than 80.5%, critical concentration value for dissolution of Avicel. During the  
751 first stage of the dissolution, an esterification reaction between hydroxyl group of cellulose and  
752 phosphoric acid occurs and cellulose phosphate (Cellulose–O–PO<sub>3</sub>H<sub>2</sub>) is formed. In the second  
753 stage, a competitive hydrogen-bond reaction between the cellulose hydroxyl groups and the  
754 solvent molecules or hydrogen ions happens and regenerated cellulose and phosphoric acid  
755 without major substitution are recovered.<sup>332,333</sup> Meanwhile, cellulose hydrolysis remains  
756 minimum since the reaction temperature is kept low enough (30-70°C) to retard the  
757 depolymerization and side reactions.<sup>334</sup>

758 Conte et al.<sup>335</sup> by applying high- and low-field NMR confirmed that a direct bonding between  
759 phosphoric acid and cellulose is formed. Zhang et al.<sup>333</sup> particularly investigated the structural  
760 changes of microcrystalline cellulose (MCC) dissolution in 83% phosphoric acid (at  
761 temperatures of 30-70°C) with X-ray diffraction, solid-state cross-polarization magic angle  
762 spinning <sup>13</sup>C-NMR, and X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy (XPS). The XRD pattern

763 demonstrated a decrease in  $\chi_c$  (crystallinity index) with increasing temperature (from 30 to 70°C)  
764 or time (from 2 to 6 h).  $\chi_c$  was calculated according to the following,

$$765 \quad \chi_c = F_c / (F_a + F_c) \times 100 \% \quad (5)$$

766 where  $F_c$  and  $F_a$  are the area of the crystal (peak of cellulose I at  $2\theta = 22.8^\circ$ ) and non-crystal  
767 regions (peak at  $2\theta = 19.8^\circ$ ), respectively.

768 Besides, the crystallinity characteristic peaks for both cellulose I and II diminished or greatly  
769 decreased after cellulose regeneration from concentrated phosphoric acid (CPA). In the spectra  
770 of CP/MAS and  $^{13}\text{C}$  solid-state NMR, distinct peaks of  $\text{C}_4$  verified transition from crystalline to  
771 an amorphous cellulose after CPA treatment.<sup>333</sup> The XRD patterns of MCC treated with 85%  
772 CPA at 323 K also demonstrated that more cellulose I was converted to cellulose II by increasing  
773 reaction time from 0 to 6 h.<sup>336</sup> Jia et al.<sup>337</sup> chemically modified MCC with phosphoric acid in  
774 order to enhance its processing for applications in gelling material and emulsion stabilizers.  
775 Regenerated cellulose at some angles corresponding to crystallographic planes of cellulose II  
776 exhibited less crystallinity compared to intact MCC. Besides, the crystallinity index was reduced  
777 by 48% after regeneration.

778 The dissolution was also capable of fractionating lignocellulose components at the modest  
779 reaction conditions, and the cellulose can be regenerated by an organic solvent, e.g., ethanol and  
780 acetone, or water.<sup>240,334</sup> Addition of an antisolvent, e.g., acetone, makes the dissolved cellulose  
781 and hemicellulose to precipitate and partial dissolution of lignin in acetone also takes place.  
782 Besides, hemicellulose oligomers are fractionated from cellulose due to higher solubility in water  
783 and poor solubility in water/acetone mixture.<sup>334</sup> The regenerated amorphous cellulose,  
784 precipitated from the dissolved cellulose, demonstrated extremely high reactivity for enzymatic

785 digestibility, suggesting the dissolution technique as a new approach for the pretreatment of  
786 lignocelluloses.<sup>331</sup> Recently, a new cellulose solvent- and organic solvent-based lignocellulosic  
787 fractionation (COSLIF) using concentrated phosphoric acid, as a cellulose solvent, and an  
788 organic solvent (e.g., acetone or ethanol) for the solute precipitation, at modest reaction  
789 conditions was developed.<sup>334</sup> This novel pretreatment was able to effectively disrupt  
790 lignocellulosic structure of switchgrass,<sup>340</sup> bamboo,<sup>338</sup> common Reed,<sup>339</sup> and miscanthus and  
791 hybrid poplar.<sup>340</sup> Table 2 summarizes the results of glucan digestibility improvement after  
792 COSLIF, as well as the applied conditions, for different lignocelluloses. As can be seen in Table  
793 2, COSLIF pretreatment is performed at mild conditions, e.g., temperatures of ca. 50-60 °C,  
794 atmospheric pressure, and short pretreatment time (~1 h), using acetone, ethanol, and water as  
795 anti-solvent. Compared with other most commonly used pretreatment methods, such as dilute  
796 acid, alkali, and hydrothermal, the sugar yields for CPA pretreatment for a variety of hardwoods  
797 and agricultural residues are very high. For an instance, over 90% glucan digestibility was  
798 achieved after 72 h hydrolysis even at low enzyme loadings. Moreover, some studies reported  
799 ethanol yield enhancement by the CPA pretreatment (Table 3).

800 COSLIF was observed to follow a different mechanism than alkali or acid pretreatment with  
801 respect to changes in lignocellulosic components. Zhu et al.<sup>341</sup> compared glucan, hemicellulose,  
802 and lignin contents of the COSLIF and dilute acid (DA) pretreated corn stover. They reported  
803 that COSLIF removed more lignin compared to DA pretreatment. Siripong et al.<sup>342</sup> reported  
804 removals of all xylan and ca. half of acid-insoluble lignin from two wood species as a result of  
805 CPA (80%) pretreatment. Similarly, Rollin et al.<sup>240</sup> reported a 67% and 34% hemicellulose and  
806 lignin removals, respectively, from switchgrass by CPA pretreatment. They reported more  
807 increase in cellulose susceptibility to hydrolysis in COSLIF pretreatment than soaking in

808 aqueous ammonia (SAA, 10% w/w ammonia, 140°C, 20:1 liquid/solid ratio, 14 h) for Alamo  
809 switchgrass (Figure 8). However, cellulose content was remained almost constant after the both  
810 pretreatments. Another action of CPA pretreatment is to hydrolyze hemicellulose acetyl groups  
811 to acetic acid.<sup>334,339</sup> The remaining hemicellulose can be enzymatically depolymerized and used  
812 as a co-substrate for fermentation.<sup>342,343</sup>

813 There are few studies in the literature that showed biogas production improvement by CPA  
814 pretreatment. A study showed 40% improvement in the methane yield obtained after CPA  
815 pretreatment (85.7% CPA at 50°C for 30 min) compared with that of the untreated oil palm  
816 empty fruit bunches.<sup>344</sup> Conversely, CPA pretreatment did not improve methane yield for berry  
817 and poplar woods.<sup>345</sup> This is presumably due to the repelling interaction of anaerobic bacteria  
818 and biomass surface after CPA pretreatment. In addition, the pores generated following CPA  
819 pretreatment may not be large enough for anaerobic bacteria to penetrate into the biomass  
820 structure.

821

822 **Table 2.** Glucan digestibility of various substrates prepared by cellulose solvent- (phosphoric acid) and organic solvent-based lignocellulosic  
 823 fractionation (COSLIF) pretreatment

Substrate	COSLIF condition	Enzymatic hydrolysis	Glucan digestibility	Ref.
<i>Sesbania grandiflora</i> (L.) Pers.	H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> (85%), 50°C for 45 min, 95% (v/v) ethanol as an organic solvent	1 FPU cellulase from Sigma	86% glucose in 72 h	346
<i>Achyranthes aspera</i> and <i>Sida acuta</i> weed	70%, 75%, and 80% phosphoric acid (1.0 g/8.0 mL), and 60°C for 1h, and acetone as an organic solvent	30 FPU/g dry biomass Celluclast 1.5 L and 60 U/g dry biomass β-glucosidase	Up to 86.2% and 82.2% glucan conversion yields, respectively	342
Alamo switchgrass ( <i>Panicum virgatum</i> )	85% H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> , 60°C, 1 atm, for 45 min, 95% (v/v) ethanol as an organic solvent	Novozymes 50013, 15 and 3 FPU/g glucan, supplemented with 10 IU/g β-glucosidase	90% and 85%, respectively, in 72 h	240
Moso bamboo	85% H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> , 50°C, 1 atm, for 60 min, 95% (v/v) ethanol as an organic solvent	Novozymes 50013 and β-glucosidase (Novozymes 50010) 1, 2, 5, and 15 FPU of cellulase per g glucan supplemented with 10 β-glucosidase IU/g	88.2%, 89.8%, 93.3%, and 94.9%, respectively, in 72 h	338
Common Reed ( <i>Phragmites australis</i> )	85% H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> , 50°C, 1 atm, and 60 min, 95% (v/v) ethanol as an organic solvent	15, 10, and 5 FPU and 30 units of β-glucosidase per gram of glucan (Novozymes 50013 and Novozyme 50010)	94%, 93%, and 90%, respectively, 24 h	339
<i>Miscanthus</i> and poplar	85% H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> , 50°C, 1 atm, and 60 min, 95% (v/v) ethanol as an organic solvent	5 FPU of cellulase and 10 units of β-glucosidase per gram of glucan (Novozymes 50013 and Novozyme 50010)	~93% in 72 h	340
Microcrystalline cellulose	83% H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> and ice-cold distilled water as an anti-solvent	15 FPU/g cellulose and 60 IU β-glucosidase/g cellulose	100% cellulose conversion after 3 h	331
Avicel and α-cellulose	81.7% phosphoric acid at room temperature for half-hour, and acetone as an organic solvent	15 FPU/g glucan of Genencor Spezyme®CP cellulase and 60 IU/g glucan of Novozymes 188 β-glucosidase	100% conversion within 3 h	334
Corn stover and switchgrass	84% phosphoric acid at 50°C for 45 min, and acetone as an organic solvent	15 FPU/g glucan of Genencor Spezyme®CP cellulase and 60 IU/g glucan of Novozymes 188 β-glucosidase	~96 – 97% in 24 h	334, 341
Hybrid poplar and douglas fir	85% phosphoric acid at 50°C for 60 min, and acetone as an organic solvent	15 FPU/g glucan of Genencor Spezyme®CP cellulase and 60 IU/g glucan of Novozymes 188 β-glucosidase	~97% and ~75% in 24 h for hybrid poplar and douglas fir, respectively	334
Oriented strand board, chipboard, plywood, and	85.9% phosphoric acid at 50°C for 30 min, and acetone as an organic solvent	20 FPU cellulase (Sigma, C2730) and 50 IU β-glucosidase (Sigma, G0395) per gram of substrate	87.0 – 93.5% in 96 h	348

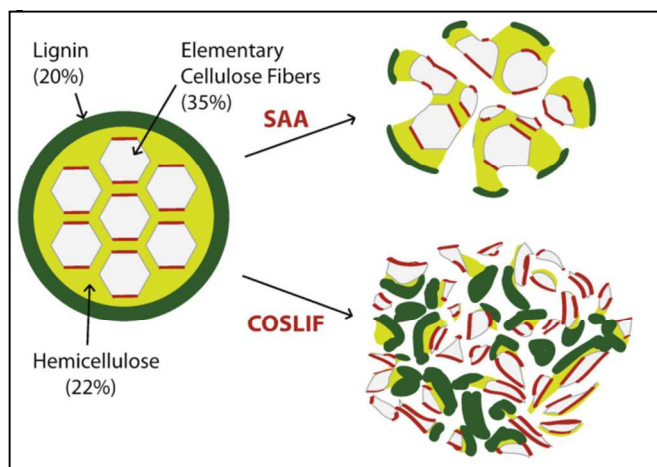
wallpaper				
Hybrid poplar ( <i>P. tormentosa</i> Carr.)	85% phosphoric acid and room temperature until complete dissolution, and water as solvent	50 FPU 1:1 blend of Celluclast 1.5 L and Novozyme 188/g substrate	92%, 72 h	349
Industrial hemp stalks	85.9% H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> at 50°C for 1 h, and organic solvent, acetone	15 FPU cellulase (Spezyme CP), and 60 IU β-glucosidase per gram of glucan	95.9%, 24 h	350
Bermudagrass, reed, and rapeseed	85% phosphoric acid at 50°C for 60 min, and acetone as an organic solvent	25 FPU of Celluclast® 1.5 L per gram of cellulose	97.5 – 99.4% (24 h)	351
Eastern gamagrass ( <i>Tripsacum dactyloides</i> ) and switchgrass	The pretreatment method reported by Zhang et al. <sup>334</sup> and modified by Ge et al. <sup>352</sup>	100 μL of Novozymes 188, or 600 μL of cellulase and 200 μL of Novozymes 1800 for high solid-loading	80.5 – 99.8% and 73.5 – 87.1%, for eastern gamagrass and switchgrass, respectively, 36 h	353
Giant reed, elephantgrass, and sugarcane clone	85% phosphoric acid at 50°C for 60 min, and organic solvent, acetone	300 μL of cellulase (Sigma C2730) and 100μL of Novozymes 188 (Sigma C6105)	Glucose yields from biomass: 0.306, 0.309, 0.331, 0.317, and 0.290 g/g for giant <i>miscanthus</i> , giant reed, giant <i>miscanthus</i> (Q42641), elephantgrass, and sugarcane, respectively	352
Corn stover and Avicel	85 % (w/w) phosphoric acid, 2 % (w/v) solid loading, described by Zhang et al. <sup>331</sup>	5 FPU/g of glucan (Novozymes 50013) and 10 units of β-glucosidase (Novozymes 50010) per gram of glucan	~90% (72 h) for corn stover and 100% (6 h) for Avicel	354

824 **Table 3.** Ethanol production from pretreated lignocelluloses prepared by COSLIF pretreatment.

Substrate	CPA pretreatment condition	Method and microorganism	Ethanol yield	Ref.
Dedicated energy crops and crop residues	Same as reported by Zhang et al. <sup>331</sup>	SHF, three self-Flocculating <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> strains: SPSC01, ATCC24859, ATCC4126	0.375 to 0.396 g/g (SPSC01), 0.380 to 0.394 g/g (ATCC24859), and 0.384 to 0.405 g ethanol/g (ATCC4126) glucose	352
Oil palm empty fruit bunches (OPEFB)	Same as reported by Zhang et al. <sup>334</sup>	SSF, <i>S. cerevisiae</i>	89.4% of theoretical maximum ethanol yield	355
Aspen wood ( <i>Populus tremula</i> )	Phosphoric acid (85%), 12.5% solid loading, 50°C, 90 rpm, 30 min, and acetone as an organic solvent	NSSF, <i>Mucor hiemalis</i>	72.4% of theoretical maximum ethanol yield	356
Rice straw, elmwood, and pinewood	Same as of Rollin et al. <sup>240</sup>	SHF, <i>Mucor indicus</i>	Over 78-92% ethanol yield based on glucose consumed	342
<i>Trypsacum dactyloides</i>	Same as of Zhang et al. <sup>334</sup>	SHF, a self-flocculating yeast strain SPSC01	Up to 0.496 g ethanol/g glucose	353

SHF: separate enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation; SSF: simultaneous saccharification and fermentation; NSSF: non-isothermal simultaneous saccharification and fermentation

825



826

827 **Figure 8.** Conceptual image of alteration in lignocellulose structure as a result of cellulose solvent-  
 828 (concentrated phosphoric acid) and organic solvent-based lignocellulose fractionation (COSLIF) and  
 829 soaking in aqueous ammonia (SAA) pretreatments (taken from ref. 235 with permission)

830

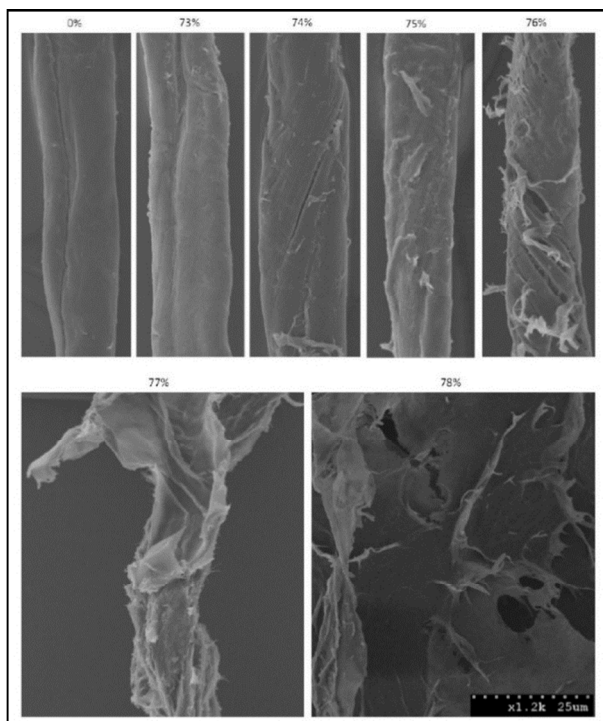
## 831 **6.1 Criteria for efficient phosphoric acid pretreatment**

832 A narrow range of phosphoric acid concentration is required for cellulose phase transition from  
833 swelling to dissolution to occur. Only phosphoric acid above its critical concentration is able to  
834 disrupt lignocellulose recalcitrant structure.<sup>331</sup> Critical phosphoric acid concentration is 77–83  
835 wt.%, depending on substrate type and its moisture content. Figure 9 shows SEM images of  
836 pretreated cotton fibers with a range of o-phosphoric acid concentrations.<sup>357</sup> As this figure  
837 shows, amorphogenesis begins to develop at the surface of the cotton fibers when the acid  
838 concentration was increased to near its critical values of cellulose dissolution. At 74% acid  
839 concentration, splitting, roughening, fibrillation, and peeling/delamination were observed,  
840 indicating that amorphogenesis started at the surface of the cotton fibers and developed by  
841 increasing acid concentration to 76%, and 78%, caused to destroy fiber structure and  
842 diminishing, respectively.<sup>351</sup> Moxley et al.<sup>350</sup> have also found that a minimum phosphoric acid  
843 concentration of 81% is required to obtain a very rapid hydrolysis rate and high digestibility of  
844 hemp stalks. Jia et al.<sup>337</sup> discovered minimum 77.8 wt.% CPA for significant solubilization of  
845 MCC powder. Zhang et al.<sup>331</sup> showed that 77 wt.% of CPA caused only cellulose swelling while  
846 ice-cold phosphoric acid ( $\geq 83\%$ ) completely dissolved MCC.

847 The dissolution of (ligno)celluloses in CPA also depends on the reaction temperature and time.  
848 Cellulose dissolution by CPA usually occurs at modest reaction temperatures.<sup>334</sup> Moxley et al.<sup>350</sup>  
849 investigated the effect of 84.0%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  pretreatment at different reaction time (from 30 to 120  
850 min) at 50°C and pretreatment temperature (from 40 to 60°C) for 60 min on the enzymatic  
851 glucan digestibility of hemp stalks. Higher reaction temperatures and time resulted in faster fiber  
852 dissolution; however, significant hydrolysis of cellulose and hemicellulose or sugar degradation  
853 occurred at this condition. In terms of enhanced MCC processing ability by CPA, however, a



854 decreasing trend in solubility was observed by increasing the temperature from 5 to 75°C.<sup>337</sup>  
855 Sathitsuksanoh et al.<sup>339</sup> optimized the COSLIF conditions for enhanced saccharification at  
856 decreased cellulase loadings by response surface methodology (RSM). The optimal conditions  
857 were 85% (w/v) CPA, 50°C, and 60 min, regardless of the biomass moisture contents from 5–  
858 15% (w/w). These modest reaction conditions can minimize sugar degradation, inhibitors  
859 formation, and capital investment of industrial plant.



860

861 **Figure 9.** SEM images of cotton linter pretreated with different concentrations of O-phosphoric acid (0–  
862 78% w/w). Pretreatment conditions were: ice-cold temperature, one hour with occasional mixing, and  
863 water as an antisolvent (taken from ref. 357).

864

865 Addition of the volatile organic solvents is used for regenerating amorphous cellulose and  
866 hemicellulose, dissolving organic solvent lignin soluble fraction, and recycling and re-  
867 concentration of PA.<sup>358</sup> Recently, replacement of acetone by ethanol was presented and widely  
868 used in a modified version of the COSLIF. This modification is advantageous because ethanol is

869 more chemically stable than acetone for solid/liquid separation and less corrosive. Besides, very  
870 high yield of acetone recovery (e.g., >99.99%) is required for having an economically viable  
871 COSLIF implementation, whereas lower ethanol recycling/recovery after pretreatment (e.g., 98–  
872 99%) is acceptable,<sup>338-340</sup> since the remaining ethanol can be separated in ethanol distillation  
873 process. Moreover, a 40% decrease in organic solvent consumption was achieved in the  
874 replacement of acetone by ethanol.<sup>339</sup>

## 875 **6.2 Why is phosphoric acid so effective in enhancing enzymatic hydrolysis?**

876 Many studies reported that substrate accessibility to cellulase determines the susceptibility of  
877 lignocellulosic substrates to enzymatic hydrolysis.<sup>257,260,261,297,359-361</sup> Cellulose accessibility to  
878 cellulase (CAC) is usually quantified by cellulase adsorption Langmuir kinetics, as discussed in  
879 Section 5.2.<sup>261,362</sup> Recently, a quantitative assay for CAC, based on adsorption of a nonhydrolytic  
880 fusion protein containing CBM and GFP, was developed by Hong et al.<sup>363</sup> and applied for  
881 pretreated substrate characterization. CAC ( $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$  of cellulose) was calculated by multiplying a  
882 constant to maximum cellulase adsorption capacity obtained from Langmuir equation (Eq. 3).<sup>363</sup>  
883 For pretreated lignocellulosic biomass, total substrate accessibility to cellulase (TSAC)  
884 represented the cellulase adsorption capacity for the whole biomass and was calculated by  
885 adding CAC and non-cellulose accessibility to cellulase (NCAC).<sup>341</sup> TSAC was equal to CAC  
886 for protein thioredoxin-GFP-CBM (TGC) adsorption to biomass. Similarly, CAC and TSAC  
887 ( $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$  biomass) can be calculated by TGC adsorption after BSA blocking of the lignin fraction.  
888 Therefore, NCAC ( $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$  biomass) can be calculated as the difference between TSAC and  
889 CAC.<sup>341</sup> TSAC, CAC, and NCAC ( $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$  biomass) measurements of intact lignocelluloses were  
890 reported to be approximately  $1 \text{ m}^2/\text{g}$  biomass.<sup>240,339-341</sup> Untreated Alamo switchgrass (*Panicum*  
891 *virgatum*), for example, had 1.27, 0.49, and 0.77  $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$ -biomass TSAC, CAC, and NCAC,

892 respectively.<sup>364</sup> SAA slightly improved all the accessibilities, while COSLIF resulted in  
893 considerable increase of 9.6 and 8.0 for TSAC and CAC ( $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$  biomass), respectively.<sup>240</sup>  
894 Similarly, almost 2-fold increase in the accessibilities was observed for COSLIF-treated corn  
895 stover compared to DA pretreatment.<sup>341</sup> TSAC ( $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$ -biomass) of miscanthus and poplar also  
896 increased after COSLIF pretreatment but more radically from 0.18 to 20.7 and 0.23 to 18.2,  
897 respectively.<sup>340</sup> Common reed followed the same pattern as miscanthus and poplar after the  
898 pretreatment.<sup>339</sup>

899 Breaking or even restructuring highly ordered intra- and inter-molecular hydrogen-bond network  
900 of crystalline cellulose is believed to enhance its depolymerization rate.<sup>106,337,365</sup> The evidence of  
901 breaking hydrogen-bonding networks in cellulose fibers of switchgrass after COSLIF was  
902 confirmed by CP/MAS  $^{13}\text{C}$ -NMR and FTIR.<sup>365</sup> Other analytical techniques, e.g., microscopy and  
903 X-ray diffraction, also showed the disruption of hydrogen-bond network of cellulose for MCC  
904 regenerated from CPA.<sup>337</sup> John et al.<sup>366</sup> investigated the structures of native and regenerated  
905 celluloses by X-ray methods and proposed the same lattice plane location of the inter-molecular  
906 hydrogen bonds between adjacent cellulose molecules. The empty space between adjacent  
907 cellulose chains could be occupied by the hydrogen ion from phosphoric acid; therefore, inter-  
908 molecular hydrogen bonds formation is destroyed during the regeneration process.<sup>349</sup>

909 Recently, computer simulations have been employed to study the biomass recalcitrance at  
910 molecular level that otherwise cannot be analyzed with available experimental techniques.<sup>367,368</sup>  
911 Molecular dynamics simulation (MDS) and quantum chemical calculations, e.g., density  
912 functional theory (DFT) methods, are the tools of molecular simulation. These techniques have  
913 been used for the simulations of lignin biosynthesis and degradation,<sup>369,370</sup> cellulose  
914 insolubility,<sup>371</sup> and recently for the simulation of the effect of ammonia pretreatment on cellulose

915 I<sub>β</sub>.<sup>106</sup> Although models of secondary plant cell walls incorporating cellulose, xylan, water, and  
916 lignin by MD simulations were carried out,<sup>372</sup> the molecular simulation studies on  
917 lignocelluloses are scarce. This is due to the complex lignocellulose biomass structure and also  
918 the intricate relationship between enzymes, chemicals, and biomass. Molecular simulation for  
919 lignocelluloses is still in its early stage of development and needs further investigation to fill the  
920 gap of advancing analytical methods in pretreatment.

### 921 **6.3 Summary and future perspectives of phosphoric acid pretreatment**

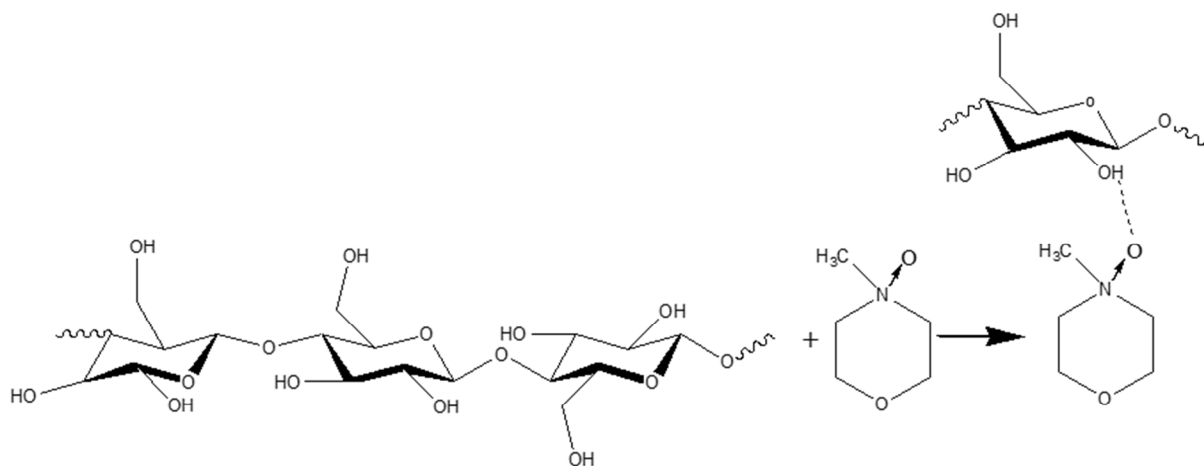
922 Taking all into consideration, COSLIF was successful with a number of agricultural residues and  
923 hardwoods<sup>342,373</sup> and demonstrated the advantages of high glucan digestibility even at low  
924 cellulase loadings, high hydrolysis rates, modest reaction conditions, higher revenues from co-  
925 products (acetic acid, lignin, and hemicelluloses), and less inhibitor formation. Besides, the  
926 remaining CPA on treated biomass did not show inhibitory effects for enzymatic hydrolysis or  
927 fermentation processes. However, it is still in its early stage of development and its  
928 commercialization is a far promising priority that needs pervasive consideration. Although there  
929 are only a few studies in the literature, CPA pretreatment does not seem to be very effective for  
930 improving biogas production from lignocelluloses. Substantial reduction in the use of chemicals  
931 (both CPA and organic solvent) is required in order to have an economically competitive  
932 process. Improvement of ethanol production process economy was suggested by the production  
933 of two major value-added byproducts, i.e., unaltered and purified lignins by the COSLIF and  
934 byproducts from fermentation.<sup>342</sup> Although CPA pretreatment seems to be very promising given  
935 the high end-product and by-products yields; however, a detailed techno-economic analysis of  
936 CPA pretreatment is required in order to study the feasibility of this pretreatment for a large-  
937 scale operation.

## 938 7 N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMMO) pretreatment

939 N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMMO or NMO) is categorized as a family of cyclic, aliphatic,  
940 tertiary amine oxides.<sup>374,375</sup> Tertiary amine oxide systems were first patented by Graenacher and  
941 Sallmann<sup>376</sup> in 1939 to dissolve cellulose for enhanced chemical processing. However,  
942 Johnson,<sup>377</sup> for the first time in 1969, introduced a cyclic mono(N-methylamine-N-oxide)  
943 compound to interact with inter-molecular hydrogen bonding networks and can dissolve  
944 cellulose, wool, silk, hair, and feather, which are insoluble in commonly used solvents. Since the  
945 late 1970s, the research on the dissolution of cellulose in NMMO was initiated when McCorsley  
946 and Varga<sup>378</sup> produced a highly concentrated, yet economical, cellulose solution by dissolving  
947 cellulose in a NMMO-water system. At that time, research on NMMO-cellulose tertiary systems  
948 was mainly focused on producing regenerated cellulose fiber that has applications in textiles and  
949 nonwovens, lyocell process, strengthening paper films, and paper coatings.<sup>374,377,379-381</sup> However,  
950 this technology has been recently introduced as a pretreatment method of lignocelluloses, e.g.,  
951 for the improvement of either second-generation bioethanol<sup>115,382-388</sup> or biogas production.<sup>388-397</sup>  
952 Having a strong N-O dipole, which acts as either ionic or donative and single bond, NMMO is  
953 capable of disrupting the hydrogen-bond networks of cellulose and building new hydrogen bonds  
954 between the polymer and the solvent<sup>375,379,398</sup> (Figure 10). Cellulose dissolution in NMMO leads  
955 to a tertiary phase of cellulose-NMMO-water system.<sup>379,399</sup> Hydration with 1–1.2 water  
956 molecules per NMMO (water content 13.3–17 wt.%) significantly improves its interaction with a  
957 solute and boosts its solvation ability, while increasing water content to 19–24% and 25–30%  
958 results into heterogeneous swelling by forming balloons and ballooning, respectively.<sup>400</sup> Higher  
959 water contents (above 35%) make fibers swell homogeneously and precipitate, because in the  
960 tertiary system water is further preferred to form hydrogen bond with NMMO than

961 cellulose.<sup>375,379,400</sup> Ballooning and swelling modes of cellulose dissolution is more efficient for  
 962 biogas production, while for ethanol production pretreatment with 85% NMMO leads to a better  
 963 lignocellulose bioprocessing.<sup>384</sup> Figure 11 shows a microscopic image of wood fiber swollen by  
 964 ballooning in NMMO solution, where three zones of the membrane of the balloons, the inside of  
 965 the balloons, and the nonswollen crystalline regions are easily identical.

966

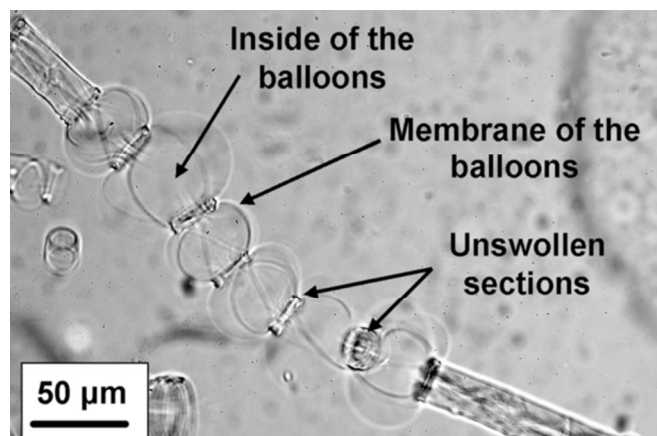


967

968 **Figure 10.** The mechanism of cellulose dissolution in NMMO, adapted from Wang et al.<sup>163</sup> with  
 969 permission.

970

971 Lignocelluloses are directly dissolved in the solvent at moderate temperatures (90–130°C) under  
 972 atmospheric pressure for 20 min to 5 h with negligible derivatization. Cellulose is subsequently  
 973 regenerated by adding water as an anti-solvent to the slurry. The regenerated cellulose (cellulose  
 974 precipitated from NMMO solution) is converted from cellulose I to cellulose II structure, which  
 975 is much more reactive for cellulase adsorption and subsequently hydrolysis.<sup>401,402</sup> The solvent is  
 976 washed away from the regenerated solids by distilled boiling water, and the excess water can be  
 977 easily vaporized due to the low vapor pressure of NMMO, allowing approximately 99% of  
 978 NMMO recycling.<sup>403</sup>



979  
 980 **Figure 11.** Wood fiber swollen by ballooning in a 78 wt.% NMMO solution in water, taken from ref. 404.  
 981

## 982 7.1 Effect of NMMO pretreatment on the superstructure of lignocelluloses

983 The enhancement in digestibility of regenerated lignocellulosic biomass by NMMO pretreatment  
 984 is mainly due to reduced cellulose crystallinity. The crystalline structure of regenerated  
 985 lignocellulose from NMMO solution as well as the untreated one are usually expressed by Total  
 986 Crystallinity Index (TCI) and Lateral Order Index (LOI) using FTIR.<sup>405</sup> FTIR spectra of  
 987 lignocelluloses can also give some valuable information of the structure and the variation in  
 988 characteristic bands by the pretreatment. Table 4 summarizes the characteristics of bands, their  
 989 corresponding functional groups, and assignments to the major biomass constituents.

990 **Table 4.** Characteristics of bands from FTIR spectra of lignocelluloses, from ref. 121.

Wavenumber (cm <sup>-1</sup> )	Functional group	Assignment
3175	–OH stretching (inter-molecular hydrogen-bonds)	Cellulose II
2900	C–H stretching	Cellulose
1740	C=O stretching (acetyl or carboxylic acid)	Hemicellulose and lignin
1510, 1610	C=C stretching (aromatic ring)	Lignin
1465	C–H <sub>3</sub> (bending)	Lignin
1420, 1430	C–H <sub>2</sub> (bending)	Cellulose
1375	C–H (bending)	Cellulose
1335	–OH (bending)	Cellulose
1315	C–H <sub>2</sub> (wagging)	Cellulose
1158	C–O–C (stretching)	Cellulose

991

992 Purwandari et al.<sup>396</sup> reported that TCI (the absorbance ratio A1427/A898 calculated from FTIR  
993 spectra) of oil palm empty fruit bunch (OPEFB) reduced by up to 78% following the  
994 pretreatment in 85% NMMO at 120°C for 3 h. In addition, ballooning and swelling modes of  
995 NMMO result in lower TCI at 120°C than at 90°C. This finding is in contrast with ballooning  
996 and swelling modes of NMMO pretreated cotton that result in lower crystallinity indexes at 90°C  
997 than 120°C.<sup>384</sup> However, compared to the untreated cotton, crystallinity indexes decrease slightly  
998 for different modes of dissolution, ballooning, and swelling.<sup>121</sup> Besides, the intra-molecular  
999 hydrogen-bonding OH stretching at about 3,350 cm<sup>-1</sup> (FTIR spectra) in pretreated cotton is  
1000 broadened and shifted to a higher wave number,<sup>384</sup> which is an indication of transforming  
1001 cellulose I to cellulose II.<sup>406,407</sup> This finding is in accordance with another report on NMMO  
1002 pretreatment of straw<sup>389</sup> and also confirms that the pretreatment reduced the structural lignin  
1003 content. NMMO pretreatment of bagasse at 130°C for 1 h transformed crystalline structure into  
1004 amorphous form, since the TCI and LOI decreased from 1.39 and 1.44 to 1.18 and 1.10,  
1005 respectively.<sup>385</sup> LOI, a criterion for the estimation of amorphous to crystalline portion of the  
1006 structure, was considerably decreased from 2.68 to 0.88 when straw fraction of manure was  
1007 pretreated for 5 h at 120°C using 85% NMMO and decreased more with increase in pretreatment  
1008 time to 15 h.<sup>389</sup> Moreover, LOI and TCI of rice straw pretreated with 85 wt.% NMMO for 5 h at  
1009 120°C were decreased from 0.46 to 0.40 and 1.69 to 1.62, respectively.<sup>387</sup> Likewise, Khodaverdi  
1010 et al.<sup>408</sup> reported that NMMO (85%) treatment of cotton linter at 120°C for 2 h resulted in TCI  
1011 and LOI decrease from 7.1 and 2.7 for untreated cotton to 3.3 and 1.1, respectively.

1012 The FTIR analysis also indicated that lignin and acetyl groups from the hemicellulose backbone  
1013 were partially removed by the pretreatment, while cellulose content was increased. Liu et al.<sup>362</sup>  
1014 qualitatively studied the abundance and distribution of lignin and cellulose in NMMO-pretreated



1015 pine flour using FTIR technique. Diminishing of the absorbance peaks at 1270 cm<sup>-1</sup> and 1596  
1016 cm<sup>-1</sup>, referring to lignin,<sup>409</sup> indicated a reduction in lignin content on the surface of pine flour  
1017 after NMMO pretreatment.<sup>362</sup> Furthermore, crystallinity measurement of the biomass by X-ray  
1018 diffraction confirmed a linear correlation ( $R^2 = 0.91$ ) between cellulose crystallinity and initial  
1019 hydrolysis rates of the pine flour samples. Virtanen and Maunu<sup>410</sup> investigated the dissolution  
1020 process of softwood pulp fibers in NMMO at 110°C for 15, 30, and 90 min by employing  
1021 different NMR spectroscopic methods: solid state cross polarization magic angle spinning (CP-  
1022 MAS), <sup>13</sup>C and <sup>15</sup>N spectroscopies, and <sup>1</sup>H high resolution MAS NMR spectroscopy. Cellulose  
1023 crystallinity of NMMO pretreatment sample for 90 min was decreased by 15%, and the C<sub>4</sub> signal  
1024 appeared different from the untreated pulp, while it remained almost constant for the first 30 min  
1025 of treatment with broadening C<sub>4</sub> signal.

## 1026 7.2 Changes in composition and microstructure during NMMO pretreatment

1027 In general, carbohydrate contents of lignocelluloses do not undergo significant changes and high  
1028 solid recoveries are achieved after NMMO pretreatments.<sup>115,394,396,397,411</sup> This is an advantage of  
1029 NMMO pretreatment over conventional pretreatment methods, since carbohydrate loss is a major  
1030 problem in most chemical, physicochemical, and biological pretreatments.<sup>136,187</sup> However, longer  
1031 pretreatment time and/or temperature lead to partial removal of acid-insoluble lignin and xylan  
1032 (or mannan in softwoods) and enrichment of glucan constituent.<sup>382,383,386,387,389,393,411</sup>  
1033 Furthermore, structural studies confirmed liberation of acetic acid from acetyl groups of biomass  
1034 during NMMO pretreatment, especially at longer pretreatment times and higher temperatures.<sup>115</sup>  
1035 Ash content was also reported to decrease from 5.4% up to 1.3% as a result of NMMO  
1036 pretreatment of OPEFB,<sup>396</sup> while no considerable change was reported for rice straw.<sup>387</sup>

### 1037 7.2.1 Cellulose accessibility to cellulases

1038 Porosity or specific surface area (SSA) of exposed cellulose is considered as another key feature  
1039 of pretreated lignocellulosic substrates that influence the hydrolysis of cellulose by cellulases. In  
1040 other words, cellulose accessibility is directly associated with the rates and extents of enzymatic  
1041 deconstruction of lignocelluloses.<sup>411</sup> Simons' Stain (SS) is a potentially useful semi-quantitative  
1042 technique for specific surface area measurement of lignocellulosic substrates,<sup>413</sup> which was first  
1043 introduced in 1950 to evaluate mechanical damage of pulp fibers during beating.<sup>414</sup> SS method is  
1044 based on dyeing substrates with direct blue 1 (DB) and then direct orange 15 (DO) to quantify  
1045 smaller and larger pore sizes, respectively.<sup>413</sup> It has advantages of measurement of interior and  
1046 exterior surface area at even wet state and being relatively fast and simple over other accessible  
1047 surface area measurement techniques.<sup>415</sup> The total adsorbed dye amount, which represents the  
1048 number of overall pores, considerably increased up to 1.5- and 2.2-fold for barley straw and  
1049 forest residues, respectively, after NMMO pretreatment at 90°C for 3–30 h.<sup>394</sup> Moreover, the  
1050 more the pretreatment time, the more the overall dye adsorbed. This finding was also confirmed  
1051 by Teghammar et al.<sup>416</sup> for rice and triticale straw. Over 74% and 86% increase in total dye  
1052 adsorption was observed for rice and triticale straw, respectively, after 15 h NMMO pretreatment  
1053 at 130°C. The biomass displays the same pattern in dye adsorption as in enzymes adsorption,<sup>416</sup>  
1054 which is directly related to the enzyme accessibility of substrate.<sup>263</sup> An increase in enzymes  
1055 adsorption by 100, 140, and 290% for triticale straw and 11, 50, and 240% for rice straw was  
1056 observed after 1, 3, and 15 h of NMMO pretreatment, respectively.<sup>416</sup>

1057 Cellulose accessibility for NMMO-treated substrates was then evaluated by comparing  
1058 maximum adsorption capacity (by Langmuir adsorption isotherm) of pretreated samples and  
1059 enzyme lignin (EnzL),<sup>362</sup> prepared by complete hydrolysis of carbohydrates in the pretreated

1060 biomass with excessive cellulase loadings.<sup>261</sup> Maximum adsorption capacity of cellulase onto  
1061 pine flour samples as well as cellulose accessibility considerably increased with increasing  
1062 NMMO pretreatment time from 30 to 120 min at 120°C. Moreover, a nearly good linear  
1063 correlation between cellulose accessibility and overall glucan conversion rate was also reported  
1064 for pine flour.<sup>362</sup>

1065 The other rapid specific surface area assessment technique is water retention value (WRV) or  
1066 water swelling capacity, which has been used to quantify swelling potential of paper pulps.<sup>417</sup>  
1067 WRV is the ability of water adsorption or the swelling capacity of substrate and reflects the  
1068 accessibility of the substrate to subsequent hydrolysis by enzymes.<sup>412</sup> Besides, since substrate  
1069 swelling and water adsorption occur mainly in the amorphous regions, the WRV can be used as a  
1070 criterion to assess changes in crystalline structure after pretreatment.<sup>418</sup> Water swelling capacity  
1071 of birch hardwood after pretreatment with 85% NMMO at 130°C for 3 h substantially increased  
1072 by 46.6-119.9% depending on the applied drying method.<sup>383</sup> The WRV of triticale straw also  
1073 slightly increased by 10%, 10%, and 20% at NMMO pretreatment time of 1, 3, and 15 hours,  
1074 respectively, and smaller increase of 10% for rice straw was realized.<sup>416</sup> However, significant  
1075 reduction in the WRV of cellulose was reported by NMMO pretreatment in dissolution mode at  
1076 either 90 or 120°C.<sup>384</sup> This behavior was observed less at lower concentrations of NMMO (than  
1077 85%), but it still had lower WRV values compared to untreated one.<sup>384</sup>

### 1078 **7.3 Advantages and disadvantages of NMMO pretreatment**

1079 NMMO is able to dissolve up to 15 wt.% of cellulose<sup>419</sup> with no/less chemical modification at  
1080 relatively mild conditions (low/moderate temperatures and atmospheric pressures). High  
1081 bioprocess efficiency, high solvent recovery, and formation of low carbohydrates degradation  
1082 and inhibitory products are also among the favorable characteristics of NMMO pretreatment.

1083 Table 5 and Table 6 summarize an overview of treatment conditions along with improvements in  
 1084 saccharification/fermentation and biogas production from different lignocelluloses after NMMO  
 1085 pretreatment. These tables show that NMMO pretreatment is conducted under relatively mild  
 1086 conditions, i.e., temperature 90-130°C for a few hours, using ~85% NMMO. As can be seen in  
 1087 these tables, NMMO pretreatment causes significant improvement in ethanol, biogas, and  
 1088 enzymatic hydrolysis yields for different types of lignocelluloses including hardwoods,  
 1089 softwoods, agricultural residues, and other cellulosic substrates. By applying NMMO  
 1090 pretreatment, ethanol can be produced by *S. cerevisiae*, *M. indicus*, and *Z. mobilis* via different  
 1091 strategies, e.g., SSF, SHF, and NSSF (Table 5). The pretreatment resulted in up to 100%  
 1092 conversion of cellulose in enzymatic hydrolysis and 93.3% ethanol yields of theoretical  
 1093 maximum for rice straw (Table 5). An improvement of about 100% in the methane yield was  
 1094 also reported after NMMO pretreatment of cotton linter.<sup>392</sup> At pilot scale, maximum hydrolysis  
 1095 sugar yields of 195 and 175 mg sugar/g wood for spruce and birch wood chips, respectively, in  
 1096 NSSF with *Mucor indicus* was also achieved.<sup>386</sup>

1097

1098 **Table 5.** Improvement in glucan conversion/ethanol production yield from different lignocelluloses  
 1099 pretreated by NMMO

Substrate	NMMO condition	Method and fermentation microorganism	Glucan conversion and/or ethanol yield	Ref.
Spruce and oak	90, 110, and 130°C , 1–3 h	NSSF <sup>1</sup> , <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>	Up to 85.4% and 89% improvement in ethanol yield for spruce and oak, respectively	115
Rice straw	85 wt.% NMMO, 120°C, 1, 3, and 5 h, 5% loading	SSF, <i>S. cerevisiae</i>	Hydrolysis yield of glucan 96%, 93.3% of theoretical maximum ethanol yield	387
Cotton linter	90 and 120°C, 0.5-15 h using 85%, 79%, and 73% NMO	SSF, <i>S. cerevisiae</i>	Improvement of up to 100% yield in enzymatic hydrolysis and 83.75% ethanol yield	384
Spruce and birch	85% NMMO, 130°C, 1–5 h	Bench-scale and airlift cultivations, <i>Mucor indicus</i>	Maximum ethanol yields of 195 and 175 mg/g wood for spruce and birch, respectively	386

Birch	85% NMMO, 130°C, 3 h	SHF, <i>S. cerevisiae</i> ,	Maximum 76.8% ethanol of theoretical yield, 9-fold increase in ethanol yield compared to untreated	383
Wheat straw	85% NMMO 120°C for 1–5 h	Anaerobic cultivations, <i>M.</i> <i>indicus</i>	Up to 92.1% of theoretical maximum ethanol yield	382
Sugarcane bagasse	NMMO monohydrate, 130°C, 1 h	SSF, <i>Zymomonas mobilis</i>	Approximately 0.15 g ethanol/g bagasse (86% of the theoretical maximum ethanol yield)	385

1100 <sup>1</sup>Non-isothermal simultaneous saccharification and fermentation

1101 **Table 6.** Improvement in biogas production from different lignocelluloses pretreated by NMMO

Substrate	Pretreatment condition	(Improvement in) methane yield	Ref.
Oil palm empty fruit bunch (OPEFB)	90 and 120°C, 1, 3, and 5 h, 85%, 79%, and 73% NMMO	Methane yield up to 0.408 Nm <sup>3</sup> /kg-VS, improvement by 167% compared to untreated	396
	73, 79, and 85% NMMO, 90 and 120°C, 1, 3, and 7 h	Maximum 0.408 Nm <sup>3</sup> CH <sub>4</sub> /kg-VS	395
Softwood spruce, rice straw, and triticale straw	130°C, 1-15 h, 85% NMMO	Up to 245, 157, and 203 Nml CH <sub>4</sub> /g raw material, respectively, 400-1200% improvement compared to the raw materials	397
Forest residues	120°C, 3, 7, and 15 h, 75% and 85% NMMO	Up to 0.17 Nm <sup>3</sup> /kg-VS <sup>1</sup> methane yield (83% of theoretical maximum yield)	393
Straw fraction of cattle and horse manure	5 h and 15 h, 120°C, 85% NMMO	Maximum methane yield increase by 53% and 51% for cattle and horse manure, respectively, after 15 h pretreatment	389
Barley straw and forest residues	85% NMMO, 3–30 h, 90°C	0.23 and 0.15 Nm <sup>3</sup> CH <sub>4</sub> /kg-VS from barley straw and forest residues, respectively; corresponding to 88% and 83% of the theoretical maximum yields	394
Blended-fibers waste textiles	85% w/w NMMO, 120°C, 2 h	Up to 62.18% of theoretical maximum methane yield (after 6 days)	391
Forest residues	NMMO concentrations of 75% and 85%, 120 and 90°C, 3 and 15 h	Maximum 141% increase in methane production (75% NMMO at 120°C for 15 h)	388
Jeans textiles	85% NMMO, 120°C, 3 h	Two-stage semi-continuous process, 400 mL methane/g-VS/day	390
Cotton linter	85% NMMO, 5% w/w solid loading, 120°C, 3 h	Approximately 100% methane yield (% of maximum theoretical) for 5 g/L cellulose concentration after 30 days	392

1102 <sup>1</sup>Volatile solid

1103 The solvent is recycled by treating the solution with ion-exchange resins to remove contaminants  
1104 and subsequent dewatering the solvent.<sup>420</sup> Due to low vapor pressure of NMMO, excess water  
1105 can be easily vaporized from the recycled solvent and leave the monohydrate form of NMMO.<sup>403</sup>  
1106 However, the water evaporation unit demands high-energy input which has considerably  
1107 negative effects on the economy of the whole process.<sup>421,422</sup> Besides, in order to have an  
1108 economical feasible process of bioethanol and biogas production by NMMO pretreatment of  
1109 lignocelluloses, more than 99 percent of NMMO recovery is required.<sup>421,422</sup> Some side reactions  
1110 and/or NMMO ring cleavage can occur in cellulose-NMMO solutions, especially at the elevated  
1111 process temperatures,<sup>423,424</sup> which hamper efficient solvent recovery. A study showed that a  
1112 smaller amount of reducing sugars was liberated from NMMO-pretreated sugarcane bagasse at

1113 130°C rather than 100°C, possibly due to NMMO or cellulose degradation.<sup>385</sup> In some studies,  
1114 recycled NMMO showed the same performance in hydrolysis improvement and biogas  
1115 production of pretreated sugarcane bagasse and barley straw, respectively,<sup>385,394</sup> as compared  
1116 with fresh NMMO. However, in contrast, forest residues with high lignin and bark content  
1117 resulted in 55% reduction in methane yield after pretreatment with recycled NMMO in  
1118 comparison with those pretreated with the fresh NMMO.<sup>394</sup>

1119 The remaining NMMO in the regenerated solids may prove to have inhibitory effects on  
1120 fermenting organisms and/or hydrolytic enzymes. NMMO concentration of 5 and 100 g/L has  
1121 been shown to reduce the enzymatic hydrolysis yields by 12% and 76%, respectively, after 12 h  
1122 of hydrolysis for cotton linter.<sup>384</sup> Although NMMO decreased the glucose uptake rate by *S.*  
1123 *cerevisiae* a little, it had negligible impact on the final ethanol yield even at concentration of 100  
1124 g/L.<sup>115,384</sup> However, ethanol yield and productivity were decreased at concentrations above 2%  
1125 NMMO for *M. indicus*, while total production of metabolites was not significantly changed.<sup>386</sup>

1126 This was because some glucose shunted from the ethanol to the glycerol pathway as the glycerol  
1127 yield and production increased in proportion to NMMO concentration. Recently, He et al.<sup>425</sup>  
1128 introduced a NMMO-tolerant cellulase-producing strain from a newly isolated *Galactomyces* sp.  
1129 CCZU11-1. The results showed that up to 25% (w/v) NMMO had no significant effect on the  
1130 saccharification of NMMO-pretreated sugarcane bagasse prepared at 130°C for 1 h or  
1131 fermentation by *S. cerevisiae*. On the other hand, NMMO remaining in the pretreated substrate at  
1132 concentrations higher than 0.002% was reported to considerably decrease the methane yield.<sup>393</sup>

1133 Once the solvent was washed away from the substrate, NMMO leaving the process ends up in  
1134 the wastewater stream. Nevertheless, it is not of great concern, since NMMO is an  
1135 environmentally friendly solvent.<sup>426,427</sup>

1136 Techno-economic analysis of NMMO pretreatment of spruce for bioethanol and biogas<sup>421</sup> and  
1137 forest residues for biogas production elucidated high process energy efficiency.<sup>422</sup> In the case of  
1138 bioethanol production, a biogas plant in parallel to valorize pentoses can improve the process  
1139 economy.<sup>421</sup> This is because most ethanol-producing organisms cannot assimilate pentoses  
1140 efficiently.<sup>343</sup> When forest residues were co-digested with two-thirds of organic fraction of  
1141 municipal solid waste in order to avoid nitrogen deficiency, the process of biogas production was  
1142 evaluated to be financially feasible at 15% internal rate of return or higher for minimum plant  
1143 capacity of 50,000 tons per year.<sup>422</sup> Generally, large amounts of water need to be vaporized in  
1144 order to efficiently recover NMMO, and this is among the barriers for its commercialization.<sup>421</sup>

## 1145 **8 Ionic liquid pretreatment**

### 1146 **8.1 Ionic liquids: historical evolution and general properties**

1147 Ionic liquids (ILs) are usually defined as large organic salts, composed entirely of an organic  
1148 cation and an organic or inorganic anion, which exist in liquid form at or below 100°C.<sup>428</sup> The  
1149 field of ILs was first discovered in 1914 by Walden,<sup>429</sup> who synthesized and characterized ethyl-  
1150 ammonium nitrate ([EtNH<sub>3</sub>][NO<sub>3</sub>]) by neutralizing of ethylamine with concentrated nitric acid.  
1151 Organic based chloroaluminates ILs were first developed by Hurley et al.<sup>430</sup> in 1951. A new class  
1152 of ILs with melting point lower than ambient temperature based on 1-alkyl-3-methylimidazolium  
1153 cation, called room-temperature ionic liquids (RTILs) and considered as the first generation ILs,  
1154 has emerged since 1982 after the study by Wilkes et al.<sup>431</sup> The replacement of the moisture-  
1155 sensitive anion in the first generation ILs by the tetrafluoroborate ion ([BF<sub>4</sub>]<sup>-</sup>) and other anions  
1156 resulted in more water-stable ILs in 1992, known as second-generation ILs.<sup>432</sup> Third generation



1157 ILs, known as “task-specific” ionic liquids (TSIL), which covalently incorporate either anions or  
1158 cations or both as functional groups, were introduced by Davis<sup>433</sup> in 2004.

1159 ILs have negligible vapor pressures, high viscosity, and reasonable thermal and chemical  
1160 stability, compared with typical organic solvents.<sup>434,435</sup> These properties can be changed and  
1161 controlled by selection of cations and anions developed for a special application. This is why ILs  
1162 are usually defined by the term “designer solvents”.<sup>436</sup> ILs, due to their unique properties, have  
1163 received significant attention for vast applications in chemical and biochemical  
1164 industries.<sup>428,435,437-441</sup>

## 1165 **8.2 Solvation in ILs**

1166 A simulation and vibration spectroscopy study of water-IL suggested the concentration  
1167 dependence solubility of water in IL. At low concentrations, the dissolution mechanism of water  
1168 is molecular dispersion, while water aggregation takes place at higher concentrations.  
1169 Dissolution of benzene in [DMIM](1,3-dimethylimidazolium)[PF<sub>6</sub>], however, makes an  
1170 expansion in the IL structure, while the long-range charge ordering pattern in the IL still  
1171 exists.<sup>442</sup> One of the promising solvation features of ILs is their ability to dissolve  
1172 monosaccharides, which are barely soluble in common solvents, except water.<sup>443,444</sup> Like  
1173 benzene, a simulation understanding of glucose dissolution in the ionic liquid [DMIM][Cl] has  
1174 been established.<sup>445,446</sup> The nature of the solute-solvent interaction in the system is mainly  
1175 hydrogen bond with high chloride content of the IL. Youngs et al.<sup>446</sup> suggested that the dominant  
1176 coordinate of glucose dissolution in excess IL is formation of three hydrogen-bond between OH  
1177 groups of glucose and three anions, and a OH $\cdots$ Cl $\cdots$ HO bridge between the last two OH groups  
1178 and the forth chloride. The RTILs that contain dicyanamide anion were also reported to dissolve  
1179 significant amounts of glucose, sucrose, lactose, and cyclodextrin.<sup>447</sup> Other monosaccharides,

1180 including arabinose, fructose, mannose, and xylose, seem to have partial to high solubility in  
1181 different ILs.<sup>448</sup> Surprisingly, not only monosaccharides but also oligosaccharides and even  
1182 polysaccharides are soluble in ILs.  $\alpha$ -cyclodextrin and starch, for example, were shown to have  
1183 30% and 10% solubility, respectively, in [BMIM](1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium)[Cl].<sup>448</sup> Unlike  
1184 dissolving saccharides in classic solvents, e.g., DMF and DMSO, the derivatization of native  
1185 carbohydrates in ILs is of great importance since it is a green process.<sup>443</sup> However, the aim of  
1186 most studies on carbohydrate ILs interaction is to produce non-derivatized cellulose, which has  
1187 demonstrated vast applications in fibers and composite fibers production,<sup>449</sup> as monoliths and  
1188 films,<sup>443</sup> and more recently, lignocellulosic biomass pretreatment.<sup>173</sup>

### 1189 8.2.1 Dissolution of cellulose in ILs

1190 The first attempt to dissolve cellulose in ILs is dated back to 1934 when Graenacher<sup>450</sup> first  
1191 utilized heated N-ethylpyridinium chloride in the presence of N-containing bases. Although  
1192 many studies consider Graenacher's patent as the pioneer in IL dissolution of cellulose; however,  
1193 recently, Sun et al.<sup>451</sup> claimed that the dissolution was stipulated by the addition of nitrogen-  
1194 containing bases and not by IL alone. Besides, the co-solvents used were volatile and the IL itself  
1195 had a relatively high melting point ( $T_m$ ; 120°C) over conventional ILs. More recently, Swatloski  
1196 et al.<sup>452</sup> investigated cellulose dissolution in ILs based on 1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium cations  
1197 by publishing a highly cited paper in 2002. They further analyzed cellulose and cellulose  
1198 oligomers in 1-butyl-3-methyl-imidazolium chloride IL solution using high-resolution <sup>13</sup>C  
1199 NMR.<sup>453</sup> The <sup>13</sup>C NMR data indicated that  $\beta$ -(1 $\rightarrow$ 4)-linked glucose oligomers were disordered,  
1200 with conformational behavior parallels the one observed in water.

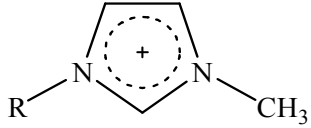
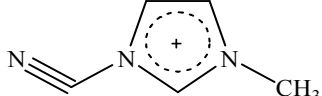
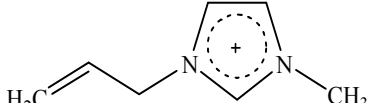
1201 The selection of cations and specially anions in ILs plays a crucial role in cellulose  
1202 dissolution.<sup>108</sup> Since the cellulose-IL bond, in nature, is hydrogen-bond,<sup>446</sup> it seems that anions

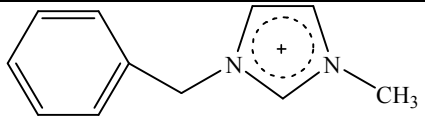
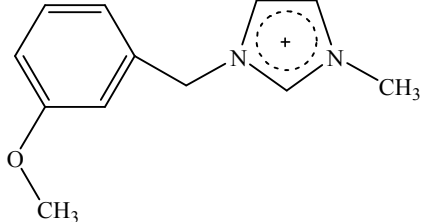
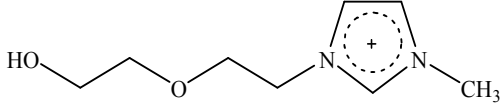
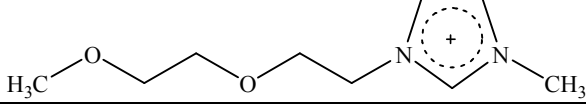
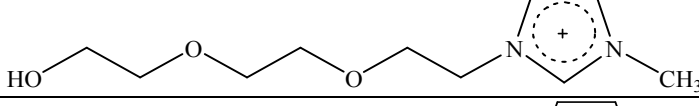
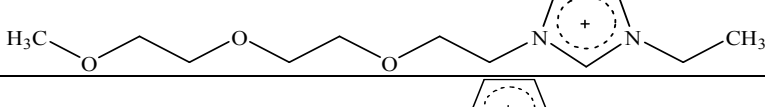
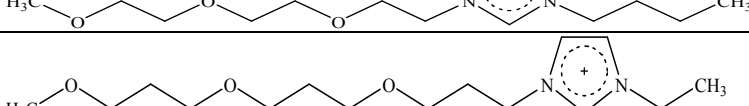
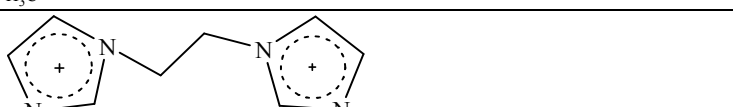
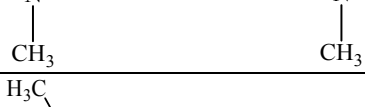
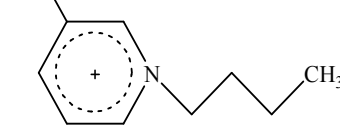
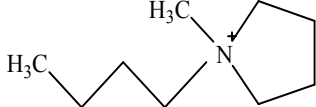
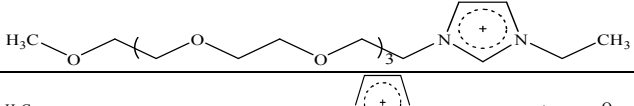
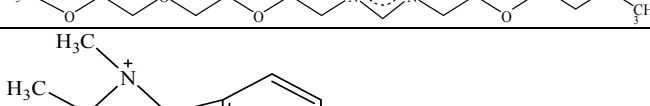

1203 with more hydrogen-bond-acceptor capability, e.g.,  $\text{OAc}^-$ ,  $\text{HCOO}^-$ ,  $(\text{MeO})_2\text{PO}_2^-$ , and  $\text{Cl}^-$ , are the  
1204 suitable candidates for the solubility, while ILs with low-basicity anions, such as dicyanamide-  
1205 based ILs, are not that efficient in dissolving cellulose.<sup>108</sup> ILs containing ‘noncoordinating’  
1206 anions, including  $[\text{BF}_4]^-$  or  $[\text{PF}_6]^-$ , on the other hand, display no cellulose solubility.<sup>452</sup> Unlike  
1207 anions, cations in ILs play an unclear, but effective role, in the cellulose dissolution.<sup>108</sup> Table 7  
1208 listed the structure of some well-known ILs’ cation for cellulose dissolution. Li et al.<sup>454</sup>  
1209 performed a simulation study and concluded that ILs with unsaturated heterocyclic cations can  
1210 dissolve cellulose, whereas ILs with saturated ring cations can hardly dissolve cellulose. The  
1211 reason for that was reported to be related to the structure factor and dynamic effect of the cations.  
1212 Zhang et al.<sup>455</sup> synthesized and used 1-allyl-3-methylimidazolium chloride as a non-derivatizing  
1213 solvent for molecular dissolution of cellulose at room temperature. Although intra- and inter-  
1214 molecular hydrogen-bond disruption were mainly due to the formation of chloride hydrogen-  
1215 bond network, it was suggested that small polarized cation,  $[\text{AMIM}]^+$ , also helped the attack on  
1216 oxygen atoms of cellulose hydroxyl in this case.<sup>455,456</sup> The  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR spectrum of MCC dissolved  
1217 in  $[\text{AMIM}][\text{Cl}]$  clearly resolved the six signals of carbon atoms of unmodified anhydroglucose  
1218 similar to cellulose dissolved in sodium hydroxide solution or  $[\text{BMIM}][\text{Cl}]$ .<sup>455</sup> However, the  
1219 dissolution mechanism was not dominated by hydrogen bond formation between cellulose and  
1220 chloride. Thus, first, it is important to compare cellulose solubility in chloride alkali metal salts.  
1221 Chloride in  $\text{LiCl}$ , for example, perfectly interacts with cellulose hydroxyl groups and dissolve  
1222 cellulose in the presence of N,N-dimethylacetamide (DMAc).<sup>455</sup> Nevertheless, other chloride  
1223 salts, e.g., sodium, potassium, barium, and calcium chloride, are unable in dissolving  
1224 cellulose.<sup>455</sup> Although concentrated zinc chloride is able to dissolve cellulose, its solvation  
1225 behavior is due to the formation of zinc-cellulose complex.<sup>457</sup> Second, a unique anion with

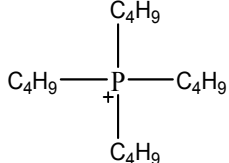
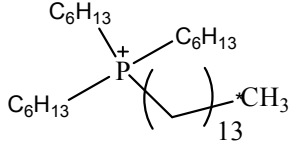
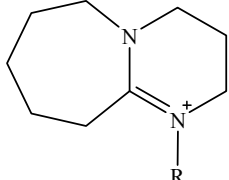
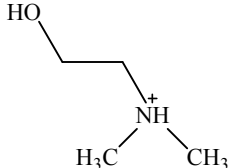
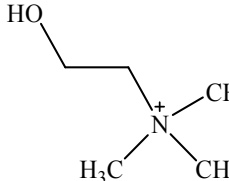
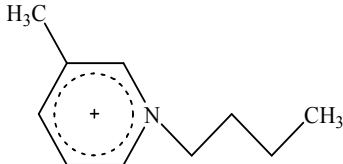
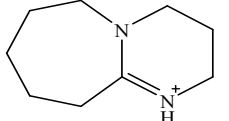
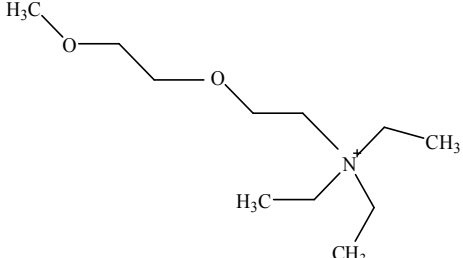
1226 solubility potential, when combining with all range of cations, was not found. Vitz et al.<sup>458</sup>  
 1227 conducted a thorough study on cellulose dissolution in imidazolium-based ILs with particularly  
 1228 bromide and chloride anions. An odd-even effect for imidazolium chloride ILs with more  
 1229 cellulose solubility in even-numbered alkyl chains of cation compared to the odd-numbered was  
 1230 observed. Whereas, this pattern was not generalized for imidazolium-based ILs containing  
 1231 bromide anion. 1-Ethyl-3-methylimidazolium diethyl phosphate, however, demonstrated the  
 1232 maximum solubility of cellulose among the all imidazolium-based ILs. Although the role of  
 1233 cation is not yet well-clarified, it was reported that the size and polarizability and attached  
 1234 functional groups of the cation, e.g., hydroxyl end-group, or basic oxygen atoms affected its  
 1235 solubility.<sup>108</sup>

1236 Sets of TSILs, or so-called tailor-made ILs, were also designated and characterized for  
 1237 dissolution and depolymerization of cellulose under mild conditions.<sup>459</sup> Thermal heating  
 1238 especially by microwave or sonication, degree of polymerization of cellulose, and the IL  
 1239 viscosity are among the non-IL-intrinsic effective factors in cellulose dissolution.<sup>108,460-463</sup>

1240 **Table 7.** Structure of cations of well-known ILs used in dissolution of lignocellulosic feedstocks

Cation structure	Name
	R=CH <sub>3</sub> : 1,3-dimethylimidazolium R=C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> : 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> : 1-propyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> : 1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>11</sub> : 1-pentyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>13</sub> : 1-hexyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>7</sub> H <sub>15</sub> : 1-octyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>8</sub> H <sub>17</sub> : 1-nonyl-3-methylimidazolium R=C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>19</sub> : 1-decyl-3-methylimidazolium
	1-cyano-3-methylimidazolium
	1-allyl-3-methylimidazolium

	1-benzyl-3-methylimidazolium
	1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-3-methylimidazolium
	1-(3,6-dioxaheptyl)-3-methylimidazolium
	1-ethyl-3-(3,6-dioxaheptyl)imidazolium
	1-(3,6,9-trioxanonyl)-3-methylimidazolium
	1-ethyl-3-(3,6,9-trioxadecyl)imidazolium
	1-butyl-3-(3,6,9-trioxadecyl)imidazolium
	1-ethyl-3-(4,8,12-trioxatridecyl)imidazolium
	3,3-ethane-1,2-diylbis(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-3-ium)
	1-butyl-3-methylpyridinium
	1-butyl-1-methylpyrrolidinium
	1-ethyl-3-(3,6,9,12,15,18,21-heptaoadococyl)imidazolium
	1-(3,6-dioxaheptyl)-3-(3,6,9-trioxadecyl)imidazolium
	N-benzyl-N,N-dimethylammonium

	tetrabutylphosphonium
	trihexyltetradecylphosphonium
	R=CH <sub>3</sub> : 8-methyl-1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-enium R=C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> : 8-butyl-1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-enium R=C <sub>8</sub> H <sub>17</sub> : 8-octyl-1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-enium
	N,N-dimethylathanolammonium
	Choline bis[(trifluoromethane)sulfonyl]imide
	1-butyl-3-methylpyridinium
	1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-enium
	N,N,N-triethyl-3,6,9-trioxadecylammonium

1241 8.2.2 Dissolution and regeneration of lignocellulosic biomass in ILs

1242 Kilpeläinen et al.<sup>464</sup> demonstrated the capability of imidazolium-based ILs in dissolving

1243 hardwoods and softwoods under mild conditions. Xie et al.<sup>465</sup> also reported the preparation of

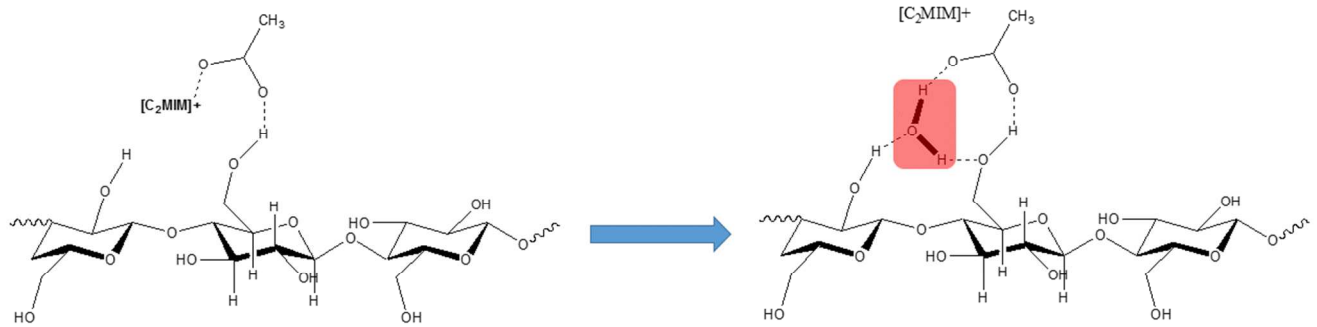
1244 wool keratin/cellulose blended materials by dissolution and regeneration using [BMIM][Cl]. Fort  
1245 et al.<sup>466</sup> processed and analyzed the dissolution of woods of different hardness in [BMIM][Cl].  
1246 They reported the partial dissolution of untreated wood and celluloses with purities, physical  
1247 properties, and processing characteristics comparable to those of pure cellulose samples  
1248 subjected to similar treatment, which can be easily recovered from the resulting solutions by the  
1249 addition of a variety of precipitating solvents. Li et al.<sup>467</sup> investigated the factors affecting  
1250 dissolution of three wood species and regeneration in [AMIM][Cl]. Wood density, pulverization  
1251 intensity, and the nature of the regeneration anti-solvents were reported as the main factors  
1252 affecting the overall process. Generally, the ILs' anion and cation (cf. Section 8.2.1 for  
1253 cellulose), viscosity, solvation properties, melting point and thermal decomposition, biomass  
1254 particle size and type and loading, temperature and time of treatment, and microwave heating  
1255 and sonication are among the important factors governing the dissolution of lignocellulosic  
1256 biomass in ILs, which were recently reviewed by Badgajar and Bhanage.<sup>468</sup> Freire et al.<sup>469</sup>  
1257 determined a set of thermophysical properties, i.e., density, viscosity, and refractive index, and  
1258 isobaric thermal expansivity and heat capacities, for eight imidazolium-based ILs, as the  
1259 important intrinsic IL parameters in the lignocellulose dissolution, and also the impact of anion  
1260 type was investigated. Among the studied ILs, [EMIM][CH<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>] was reported as the best  
1261 candidate for lignocellulose dissolution, since it has shown to have a low viscosity and density.  
1262 As the solvent properties of ILs, Doherty et al.<sup>470</sup> concluded, by comparison of Kamlet–Taft  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  
1263 and  $\pi^*$  solvent polarity parameters of three RTILs, (i.e., [EMIM][OAc], [BMIM][OAc], and  
1264 [BMIM][MeSO<sub>4</sub>]) that the  $\beta$  parameter is an excellent predictor of pretreatment efficacy.  
1265 Regarding the properties of lignin, Li et al.<sup>471</sup> achieved rapid dissolution of bagasse and southern

1266 yellow pine in [EMIM][OAc] by using a dissolution temperature above the glass transition of  
1267 lignin.

#### 1268 8.2.2.1 Role of solvent in regeneration of cellulose from IL solution

1269 Hauru et al.<sup>472</sup> characterized the Kamlet–Taft (KT) values of [EMIM][OAc], [TMGH][EtCO<sub>2</sub>],  
1270 and [TMGH][OAc], and NMMO at several water contents and temperatures to investigate the  
1271 role of the solvent in cellulose regeneration from the ILs solution. The regeneration of cellulose  
1272 was reported to start at thresholds values of approximately  $\beta < 0.8$  ( $\beta - \alpha < 0.35$ ). Shi et al.<sup>473</sup>  
1273 investigated pretreatment of switchgrass with different [EMIM][OAc] and water concentration  
1274 (50-80%) at 160°C and concluded a strong dependency of the chemical composition and  
1275 crystallinity of the pretreated biomass as well as the corresponding lignin dissolution and  
1276 depolymerization on the IL concentration. They found the hydrogen-bond basicity of the  
1277 [EMIM][OAc]–water as a suitable indicator of predicting the cellulose dissolution, lignin  
1278 depolymerization, and sugar yields. Besides, their molecular simulation indicated that water acts  
1279 as a co- and anti-solvent in cellulose dissolution at below and above 50% [EMIM][OAc]  
1280 concentration, respectively. The role of anti-solvent, e.g., ethanol, water, and acetone, in  
1281 cellulose regeneration from a cellulose/[BMIM][OAc] mixture was studied by molecular  
1282 simulation.<sup>474</sup> Structural analysis based on radial distribution function revealed that among the  
1283 three studied solvents, water was the most effective solvent at breaking the cellulose–[Ac]<sup>-</sup> H-  
1284 bonds, lead to the subsequent formation of cellulose–cellulose H-bonds, and demonstrated the  
1285 best solvent for cellulose regeneration. Another molecular dynamics study was conducted to  
1286 investigate the interaction of [EMIM][OAc], a cellulose oligomer, and water as an antisolvent.<sup>475</sup>  
1287 Figure 12 shows the proposed intermediate formed during the regeneration of a cellulose  
1288 oligomer from IL solution by using water, based on the simulation.





1289  
1290  
1291

1292 **Figure 12.** Intermediate structure of cellulose regenerated from an IL in the presence of water as an anti-  
1293 solvent proposed by Liu et al.<sup>475</sup> using MD simulation, picture adapted from Liu et al.<sup>475</sup>

1294

#### 1295 8.2.2.2 Biomass loading

1296 Some studies on IL pretreatment have focused on high biomass loading in the pretreatment,  
1297 instead of typical approximate 5.0 wt.%, since it is a crucial factor for process economy. Besides,  
1298 a minimum amount of consumed IL and waste generation happen at high biomass loading.<sup>476</sup>

1299 Cruz et al.<sup>477</sup> investigated the effects of switchgrass loading on [EMIM][OAc] pretreatment in  
1300 terms of viscosity, cellulose crystallinity, chemical composition, saccharification kinetics, and  
1301 sugar yield. The IL pretreatment caused reduction in biomass recalcitrance for 3, 10, 20, 30, 40,  
1302 and 50 wt.% biomass loading and a “solid” like behavior was observed when the biomass  
1303 loading increased. Moreover, the IL pretreatment caused transformation of cellulose crystalline  
1304 structure from I to II for 3, 10, 20 and 30 wt.% samples, while a mostly amorphous structure was  
1305 found for 40 and 50 wt.% samples. Likewise, Wu et al.<sup>478</sup> reported the feasibility of  
1306 [EMIM][OAc] pretreatment of corn stover at 125°C for 1 h at 50 wt.% biomass loadings in  
1307 dramatic reducing the recalcitrance of the biomass. In another study, da Silva et al.<sup>479</sup> used a  
1308 twin-screw extruder with high shear force to pretreat sugarcane bagasse at high solids loading in  
1309 [AMIM][Cl]. They obtained the maximum glucan digestibility of 90% after 24 h of enzymatic

1310 saccharification of pretreated substrate at a loading as high as 25 wt.% at 140°C for 8 min. The  
1311 pretreatment decreased the crystallinity significantly and increased specific surface area (SSA)  
1312 by more than 100-fold. At higher biomass loading of 50 wt.%, still 76.4% glucose yield was  
1313 obtained. Li et al.<sup>480</sup> obtained 99.8% fermentable sugars from switchgrass by [EMIM][OAc]  
1314 pretreatment at 15% (w/w) biomass loading during a 600- and 60-fold process scale-up for the  
1315 pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis, respectively. Ninomiya et al.<sup>481</sup> investigated the  
1316 cholinium IL pretreatment as a function of IL/biomass weight ratio of bamboo. They obtained a  
1317 critical IL/biomass ratio of 3 g/g to obtain a cellulose saccharification of 80%, in a solid-state  
1318 pretreatment.

### 1319 8.2.3 Dissolution of lignin in IL

1320 The mechanism of lignin dissolution and regeneration in [AMIM][Cl] has been investigated by  
1321 density functional theory (DFT), atoms in molecules (AIM) theory, natural bond orbital (NBO)  
1322 analysis, and Wiberg bond index (WBI) by Ji et al.<sup>482</sup> The theoretical results showed that lignin  
1323 mainly reacted with [AMIM][Cl] via H bonds, and it can be precipitated by adding water, since  
1324 the absolute value of the interaction energy of AmimCl–nH<sub>2</sub>O (n = 1, 2, and 3) is greater than  
1325 that of AmimCl–LigOH. Further analyses of the regenerated lignin by FTIR, TG, and SEM,  
1326 revealed that no chemical reaction occurred for lignin during the dissolution and regeneration  
1327 process. Wang et al.<sup>483</sup> investigated the lignin dissolution in dialkylimidazolium-based IL–water  
1328 mixtures at 60°C. They found the maximum lignin solubility at 70 wt.% IL, which was  
1329 consistent with the Hansen theory, in which the IL type is important in the solubility.  
1330 Accordingly, 1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium and methanesulfonate showed the maximum  
1331 solubility of lignin among the examined ILs with the same anions and cations, respectively. Diop

1332 et al.<sup>484</sup> invented new ILs for dissolution of lignin and concluded that lignin solubility decreased  
1333 with increasing the length of the grafted carbon chain.

1334 The capability of ILs in dissolving lignin can be employed in delignification of lignocelluloses.

1335 Fu et al.<sup>485</sup> chose [EMIM][OAc] amongst six ILs as the best candidate for the selective extraction

1336 of lignin to improve enzymatic hydrolysis of triticale and wheat straw at various temperatures

1337 (70–150°C) and time intervals (0.5–24 h). Lee et al.<sup>486</sup> also reported the enhancement in

1338 cellulose digestibility caused by partial delignification of wood flour by [EMIM][CH<sub>3</sub>COO].

1339 They reported the maximum digestibility of cellulose to be 95% for triticale straw pretreated at

1340 150°C for 90 min. Wen et al.<sup>487</sup> used [EMIM][OAc] under varying IL pretreatment conditions

1341 (i.e., 110–170°C and 1–16 h) to isolate poplar alkaline lignin. Chemical transformation

1342 monitoring of the isolated lignin via elemental analysis, 2D-HSQC spectra, quantitative <sup>13</sup>C-

1343 NMR spectra, <sup>31</sup>P NMR, and GPC analyses revealed a decrease of aliphatic OH, mainly as a

1344 result of cleavage of β-O-4' linkage happened at high temperatures, and an increase in phenolic

1345 hydroxyl groups in lignin, attributed to the dehydration reaction during the pretreatment. The

1346 same study confirmed the β-O-4' linkage broken with the dehydration and demethoxylation

1347 reactions during kraft lignin dissolution.<sup>488</sup> 2D NMR bond abundance data and size exclusion

1348 chromatography (SEC) results also revealed that lignin was depolymerized during

1349 [EMIM][OAc] pretreatment at 120 and 160°C of wheat straw, miscanthus, and Loblolly pine,<sup>489</sup>

1350 and lignin with different molecular mass was released in different stages of the pretreatment.

1351 Brandt et al.<sup>490</sup> obtained the same result in lignin characteristics isolated from miscanthus after

1352 extraction with the protic ionic liquid 1-butylimidazolium hydrogen sulfate ([HC<sub>4</sub>im][HSO<sub>4</sub>]).

1353 Their <sup>13</sup>C-NMR, <sup>1</sup>H-<sup>13</sup>C HSQC NMR, <sup>31</sup>P-NMR, Py-GC-MS, GPC, and elemental analyses

1354 showed that the lignin-hemicellulose linkages break and more than 80% depolymerization of

1355 lignin through the cleavage of glycosidic, ester, and  $\beta$ -O-4 ether bonds occurs during the early  
1356 stage of the pretreatment. As the pretreatment proceeded, repolymerization of lignin happened,  
1357 which was evidenced by increased lignin molecular weight determined by GPC, increased  
1358 phenolic hydroxyl groups content and C/H ratio in the lignin prepared at the later stage. In  
1359 another study, Varanasi et al.<sup>491</sup> pretreated *Panicum virgatum* and *Eucalyptus globulus* with  
1360 [EMIM][OAc] at different temperatures and studied compositional changes in lignin.  
1361 Preferential breakdown of S-lignin in both eucalyptus and switchgrass at high pretreatment  
1362 temperature (160°C) and breakdown of G-lignin for eucalyptus and no preferential breakdown of  
1363 either S- or G-lignin in switchgrass were observed at lower pretreatment temperatures (120°C),  
1364 which may be linked to its hydrogen-bond accepting capacities at these temperatures.  
1365 Accordingly, they suggested the mechanism similarity of the IL pretreatment to alkali  
1366 pretreatment at lower temperature and to acid pretreatment at higher temperatures. S-G-H type  
1367 lignin was obtained from bamboo by [AMIM][Cl] treatment, where partial degradation of lignin  
1368 and hemicellulose was observed.<sup>492</sup>

1369 Thermochemical analysis is also used for characterization of lignin extracted by ILs. The  
1370 depolymerization and breakdown of lignin pretreated by [EMIM][OAc] at 120°C and 160°C for  
1371 1, 3, 6, and 12 h on model biomass compounds and bioenergy feedstocks, by thermogravimetric  
1372 analysis (TGA), and differential scanning calorimetry (DSC) was reported.<sup>493</sup> Lignin dissolution  
1373 in cholinium ILs resulted in a higher maximal decomposition temperature ( $T_m$ ) and a higher  
1374 glass transition temperature ( $T_g$ ) of kraft lignin.<sup>488</sup> Moghaddam et al.<sup>494</sup> compared the  
1375 physicochemical properties of lignin isolated from sugarcane bagasse pretreated by acidified  
1376 aqueous ethylene glycol (EG) and ILs, and soda lignin from NaOH pretreatment of bagasse.  
1377 Accordingly, depolymerization of thermally stable IL and EG lignins occurred at higher

1378 temperatures compared to soda lignin. Moreover, unlike soda lignin, IL and EG lignins contained  
1379 less/no carbohydrates, with slightly lower hydrogen and higher oxygen contents.<sup>494</sup>

1380 George et al.<sup>495</sup> investigated the effects of imidazolium-based IL cation and anion combinations  
1381 on the macromolecular structure of three lignins, i.e., organosolv, alkali, and alkali low  
1382 sulphonate. The results showed a significant reduction in molecular mass and remarkable  
1383 structural change of the lignins, primarily influenced by the anion, with anion influence in the  
1384 reduction in order sulfates > lactate > acetate > chlorides > phosphates, meanwhile cleavage of  
1385 different linkages within the lignins caused by different anions. However, at least 40% of the  
1386 original large-lignin molecules, from each of the lignins studied, were observed to remain intact.  
1387 On the other hand, extraction of lignin, with relatively uniform molecular weight without  
1388 significant structural changes, from bagasse using an ionic liquid mixture [EMIM][ABS] at  
1389 atmospheric pressure and elevated temperatures (170–190°C) with maximum yield of 93% was  
1390 reported by Tan et al.<sup>496</sup> They also concluded that the ILs with the better phase separation  
1391 properties would be desirable for higher lignin extraction.

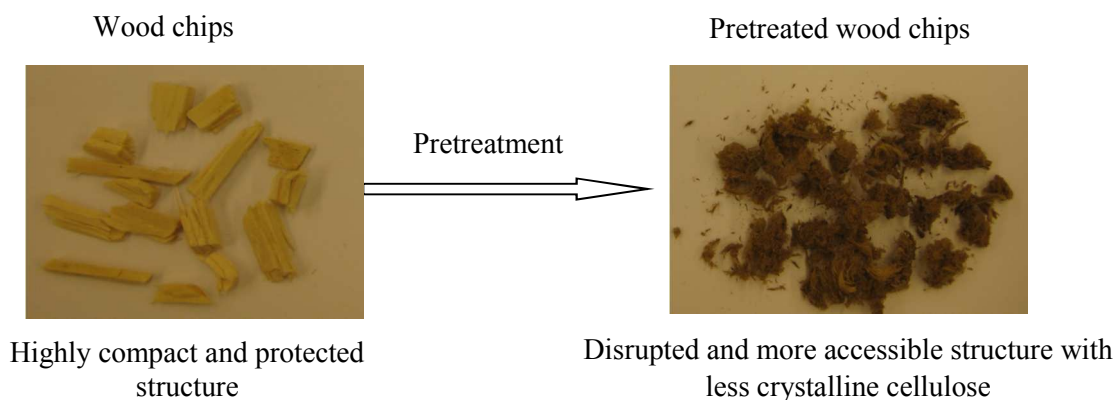
### 1392 **8.3 Effects of ILs pretreatment on the cellulose structure**

1393 A majority of studies on characterization of IL-treated lignocelluloses have focused on the  
1394 transition of cellulose crystalline structure and surface morphology of biomass (e.g., Figure 13  
1395 for macroscopic morphological changes). Zhang et al.<sup>497</sup> studied the changes in cellulose  
1396 crystalline structure of three different feedstocks, switchgrass, corn stover, and rice husk,  
1397 pretreated by [BMIM][OAc] at temperatures of 50–130°C for 6 h by XRD. Increasing the  
1398 treatment time led to a drop in biomass CrI, which was due to the swelling of crystalline  
1399 cellulose and transition of cellulose I to cellulose II. Cheng et al.<sup>498,499</sup> pretreated Avicel  
1400 cellulose, switchgrass, pine, and eucalyptus with [EMIM][OAc] at 120°C and 160°C for 1, 3, 6,

1401 and 12 h, and investigated the structural transformation and crystalline structure of cellulose.  
1402 Although for Avicel the transformation to cellulose II occurred for all processing conditions,  
1403 higher temperatures and times were required for the same transformation process for the other  
1404 feedstocks, and only expanded cellulose I lattice was observed at the mild conditions applied.  
1405 Comparable with these results, XRD analysis showed a decrease in CrI from 39.2% to ~0.09%  
1406 and 28.6% to ~0.03% for switchgrass and agave bagasse, respectively, after [EMIM][OAc]  
1407 pretreatment at 120°C for 3 h.<sup>500</sup> The regenerated cellulose from rice husk resulted from  
1408 [EMIM][DEP] pretreatment at 100°C for 10 h (1.5% (w/v) loading) showed the highest decrease  
1409 in crystallinity index from 46.0 to 32.0, amongst the different ILs used.<sup>501</sup>

1410 The morphological characterizations of wood cell wall treated with 1-ethylpyridinium bromide  
1411 ([EtPy][Br]) and [EMIM][Cl] was studied by Kanbayashi and Miyafuji.<sup>502,503</sup> The analyses of  
1412 three hardwood by light microscopy and SEM revealed that treatment with [EMIM][Cl] at 120°C  
1413 for 72 h caused significant swelling of all the woods. However, depending on the wood species,  
1414 various behavior and different morphological changes in pits have been occurred mainly due to  
1415 their chemical component and the microfibril angle.<sup>504</sup> Similarly, treatment of Japanese cedar  
1416 with [EtPy][Br] caused the cell wall swelling and elimination of warts, while it did not change  
1417 pit membranes and the cellulose crystalline structure.<sup>503</sup> Additionally, Raman microscopic  
1418 analysis showed that chemical changes in the cell walls were different for different cell wall  
1419 layers in that lignin in the compound middle lamella and the cell corner resisted to interact with  
1420 [EtPy][Br]. Singh et al.<sup>504</sup> used auto-fluorescent mapping to visualize cellulose and lignin in  
1421 switchgrass stems for determining the mechanism of biomass dissolution during 1-n-ethyl-3-  
1422 methylimidazolium acetate pretreatment. Swelling of the secondary cell wall followed by  
1423 complete dissolution of biomass within 3 h at 120°C, and subsequent lignin removal by adding

1424 an anti-solvent was observed. The surface roughness of switchgrass, pine, and eucalyptus  
1425 samples pretreated by [EMIM][OAc] at 120°C for 1, 3, 6, and 12 h showed that switchgrass  
1426 possessed much rougher internal surfaces than eucalyptus and pine.<sup>499</sup> Zhang et al.<sup>505</sup> monitored  
1427 the swelling and dissolution behavior of poplar during [EMIM][OAc] pretreatment by employing  
1428 confocal Raman microscopy. They concluded the dissolution of the biomass was divided into  
1429 two parts: slow penetration of IL, which determined the process reaction rate, and rapid  
1430 dissolution of lignin and carbohydrates. Therefore, enhancement of the penetration capacity of  
1431 IL, which was suggested to depend upon the properties of the IL, was crucial for improving the  
1432 pretreatment efficiency. Confocal Raman microscopy and confocal fluorescence microscopy  
1433 were also used to analyze the changes in different cell types including tracheids, sclerenchyma  
1434 cells, and parenchyma cells of corn stover during [EMIM][OAc] pretreatment.<sup>506</sup> A direct  
1435 correlation was then observed between changes in the morphologies and chemical composition  
1436 and swelling occurred mainly in the secondary plant cell walls.



1437

1438 **Figure 13.** The macroscopic effects of [EMIM][OAc] pretreatment on spruce softwood (picture taken  
1439 from Shafiei et al.<sup>507</sup>)

1440

#### 1441 **8.4 Acid-catalyzed hydrolysis in ionic liquids**

1442 Different acids, e.g., mineral acids, Brønsted acids,<sup>508,509</sup> solid protic-acid resin,<sup>510</sup> and even  
1443 amino acids,<sup>511</sup> have been functionalized or co-utilized to enhance the effect of the IL  
1444 pretreatment on enzymatic hydrolysis. The research conducted on using acidic ionic liquid  
1445 solution for the pretreatment of lignocelluloses can be divided into three parts. The use of acid  
1446 for direct depolymerization of polymeric carbohydrates in the presence of IL,<sup>512-514</sup> the use of  
1447 acid in ILs as a boosting pretreatment agent which can enhance the effectiveness of pretreatment  
1448 on enzymatic hydrolysis,<sup>510,515,516</sup> and using acid-functionalized IL for either direct hydrolysis or  
1449 enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses.<sup>508,517-521</sup> Although the use of homogeneous  
1450 acid catalysts has its drawbacks, acid catalyst is currently used in ILs pretreatment. One of the  
1451 main reasons is the economic viability of the IL used for pretreatment. For example, even though  
1452 [BMIM][Cl] costs ca. 1/60<sup>th</sup> of [EMIM][OAc], it is not highly efficient solvent for pretreatment;  
1453 however, the addition of acid catalyst can boost the performance of the cheaper ILs for  
1454 pretreatment.<sup>510</sup> Another reason is that acid hydrolysis of carbohydrates in such systems occurs at  
1455 lower temperatures than in aqueous phase.<sup>513</sup> Besides, because of the presence of lignin in solid  
1456 phase, sugar-lignin fractionation is easily achieved in such systems compared with aqueous  
1457 phase reactions.<sup>513</sup>

1458 Development in the acidic IL pretreatment was first focused on the direct conversion of  
1459 lignocelluloses into monomeric sugars. Li et al.<sup>512</sup> developed a method for direct hydrolysis of  
1460 cellulose in [BMIM][Cl] at 100°C under atmospheric pressure catalyzed by mineral acids. The  
1461 maximum glucose and total reducing sugar (TRS) yield of 43% and 77%, respectively, was  
1462 obtained at 0.11 sulfuric acid/cellulose mass ratio for 540 min reaction time. Likewise, a  
1463 maximum TRS yield of 65% was obtained from corn stover pretreated by [AMIM][Cl] at 100°C

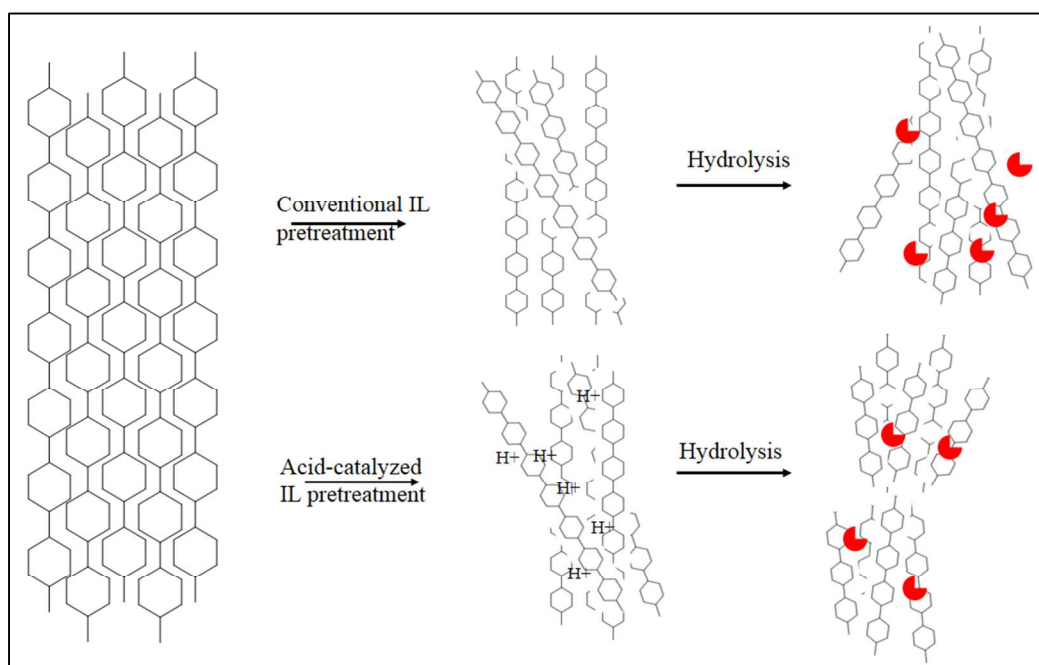


1464 for 90 min in the presence of 2.0 mmol HCl per gram lignocellulosic substrate.<sup>514</sup> Pretreatment  
1465 of three wood species including eucalyptus, pine, and spruce thermomechanical pulp was  
1466 performed at 120°C for 3 h in [AMIM][Cl] followed by dilute hydrochloric acid hydrolysis for 5  
1467 h.<sup>513</sup> This IL-based acid pretreatment resulted in near-complete conversion of the woods'  
1468 cellulose and hemicellulose at acid concentration of 1.4-1.5 mole of HCl/g wood. However, at  
1469 higher acid concentrations, the presence of several degradation compounds, such as 5-  
1470 hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF), furan-2-carboxylic acid, catechol, methylcatechol,  
1471 methylguaiacol, acetoguaiacone, and acetol, were detected in recycled IL.

1472 Although the dissolution step was conducted in low-water content, the hydrolysis step required  
1473 much more water. Consequently, high processing cost for sugar separation is a major barrier for  
1474 industrialization of this process. da Costa Lopes and Bogel-Lukasik<sup>522</sup> comprehensively  
1475 reviewed the challenges and possibilities of direct IL acid-catalyzed conversion of cellulose and  
1476 lignocellulosic biomass.

1477 A majority of studies on acidic ILs pretreatment, however, has recently focused on acid co-  
1478 solvent IL pretreatment for enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis. Partial saccharification of  
1479 carbohydrates is inevitable in such systems; however, 2- to 12-fold higher glucose conversion  
1480 rate was reported from combined acid-IL pretreatment of pine than the single pretreatment of  
1481 acid or IL.<sup>523</sup> Besides, the sole use of IL in the pretreatment usually requires high temperature  
1482 and longer reaction time.<sup>515</sup> Moreover, using an IL solution containing significant amount of  
1483 water and acid solution can reduce the expensive IL usage, in spite of significantly reducing the  
1484 solubility of lignocelluloses in most ILs at above 1% water concentration. The action of acid in  
1485 IL is a catalytic role in the hydrolysis of ether linkages between adjacent glucose in cellulose  
1486 chain and, consequently, reducing the length of the cellulose chain<sup>510</sup> (Figure 14). Zhang et al.<sup>515</sup>

1487 developed an optimized sugarcane bagasse pretreatment process using aqueous [BMIM][Cl]  
 1488 containing 1.2% HCl in the presence of 10–30% water at 130°C for 30 min. Accordingly, a  
 1489 glucan digestibility of 94–100% was obtained after 72 h of enzymatic hydrolysis using HCl, in  
 1490 the pretreatment medium, as a more effective catalyst than H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and FeCl<sub>3</sub>. Hydrochloric acid  
 1491 was also reported the most effective catalyst, amongst seven other inorganic acid studied, with  
 1492 [MMIM][DMP] in the pretreatment of corn stover at 110°C for 2 h.<sup>524</sup> Under these conditions,  
 1493 the maximum TRS yield of 92.7% was obtained after 96 h enzymatic hydrolysis.



1494  
 1495 **Figure 14.** A comparison between lignocellulosic biomass pretreatment with conventional IL and acid-  
 1496 based IL (modified from ref. 510 with permission)

1497  
 1498 The first attempt for dissolution and hydrolysis of cellulose ( $DP \approx 450$ ) in Brønsted acidic ionic  
 1499 liquids 1-(1-propylsulfonic)-3-methylimidazolium chloride and 1-(1-butylsulfonic)-3-  
 1500 methylimidazolium chloride at moderate reaction temperatures was reported by Amarasekara  
 1501 and Owereh<sup>525</sup> in 2009. The maximum TRS yield of 62% was obtained after 1 h of preheating at

1502 70°C followed by 30 min heating after adding 2.0 moles equivalent of water per glucose unit.  
1503 Then, they discovered a more effective dilute aqueous solution of 1-(1-propylsulfonic)-3-  
1504 methylimidazolium chloride and p-toluenesulfonic acid to be a better catalyst than aqueous  
1505 sulfuric acid with the same H<sup>+</sup> ion concentration for the degradation of cellulose at moderate  
1506 temperatures and pressures.<sup>526</sup> Amarasekara and Shanbhag<sup>527</sup> dissolved switchgrass biomass in  
1507 1-(alkylsulfonic)-3-methylimidazolium Brønsted acidic ILs by heating at 70°C for 2 h (0.22 g  
1508 water/g switchgrass) and obtained maximum 58.1% and 15.3% TRS and glucose yields,  
1509 respectively. Li et al.<sup>517</sup> used six kinds of SO<sub>3</sub>H-functionalized IL based on 1-methylimidazole,  
1510 1-vinylimidazole, and triethylamine to promote the hydrolysis of MCC in [BMIM][Cl]. The  
1511 acidic ILs resulted in over 83% TRS yield at 100°C with the maximum yield of 99% for  
1512 Triethyl-(3-sulfo-propyl)-ammonium hydrogen sulfate. Zhuo et al.<sup>519</sup> synthesized and used six  
1513 acidic ILs based on 2-phenyl-2-imidazoline for the hydrolysis of cellulose in [BMIM][Cl]. The  
1514 maximum TRS yield of 85.1% was obtained by using 1-propyl sulfonic acid-2-phenyl  
1515 imidazoline hydrogen sulfate, functionalized by HSO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> instead of H<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>, at 100°C for  
1516 60 min and dosage of 0.2 g water/g cellulose. The hydrolysis activity was reported to directly  
1517 relate to the activity of catalyst and also the possibility of further degradation of the resulting  
1518 carbohydrates in acidic IL to HMF.<sup>528</sup> Tao et al.<sup>529</sup> investigated the acidity and structure of  
1519 fifteen SO<sub>3</sub>H-functionalized ILs on the MCC hydrolysis and selectivity for HMF, furfural,  
1520 levulinic acid (LA), and TRS yields. A maximum MCC conversion of 91.2% and selectivities for  
1521 HMF, furfural, and LA of 45.7%, 26.2%, and 10.5%, respectively, were achieved in MnCl<sub>2</sub>-  
1522 containing ILs. The efficiency of Brønsted acidic ILs for the conversion of hardwood  
1523 hemicellulose to pentose sugars at 160°C was reported to be related to acid strength in the  
1524 following order: [C<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>HMIM][HSO<sub>4</sub>] > [C<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>HMIM][PTS] > [C<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>HMIM][Cl] >

1525 [BMIM][Cl].<sup>509</sup> Besides the activity of catalyst, solution pH is also another factor, which was  
1526 investigated by Zhang et al.<sup>520</sup> using different acid-catalyzed imidazolium IL solutions (80% in  
1527 water) at 130°C for 30 min for sugarcane bagasse. The pretreatment effectiveness was reported  
1528 to be similar by using [BMIM][CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>], [BMIM][CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>], and [EMIM][Cl], at the same  
1529 solution pH. Besides, by decreasing solution pH from 6.0 to 0.4, an increase in bagasse  
1530 delignification, xylan removal, and consequently glucan digestibility was reported. Apart from  
1531 Brønsted acidic ionic liquids, Muhammad et al.<sup>518</sup> synthesized and used an amino acid-based  
1532 ionic liquid, namely 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium glycinate, which was capable of effectively  
1533 dissolving bamboo and changed its cellulose from type I to type II.

#### 1534 **8.5 Enhancement in enzymatic digestibility of IL-pretreated lignocelluloses**

1535 The key and widely studied role of the IL pretreatment is to enhance enzymatic digestibility of  
1536 lignocelluloses.<sup>530-534</sup> Table 8 reviewed some reports on improving enzymatic hydrolysis of  
1537 different lignocelluloses due to IL pretreatment. ILs with [BMIM] and [EMIM] cations and [Cl],  
1538 [OAc], and [CH<sub>3</sub>COO] anions have been vastly used for pretreatment of different lignocellulosic  
1539 substrates. The pretreatment conditions applied were temperature 90-160°C, reaction times  
1540 ranging from several minutes to few hours, and biomass loading of ca. 2-15% depending on the  
1541 biomass and IL types. As reviewed in the table, enzymatic hydrolysis of different  
1542 (ligno)celluloses improved significantly as a result of IL pretreatment. From the reported data,  
1543 maximum 100% digestibility was reported for MCC by using [BMIM][Cl] at 90°C for 20 min.  
1544 For lignocelluloses, TRS yield was sometimes reported and in these cases the xylose yield was  
1545 also significantly improved due to IL pretreatment. For *Typha capensis*, for instance, maximum  
1546 reducing sugar yield of 82.4 g/100 g biomass was obtained by [BMIM][OAc] pretreatment. A

1547 high xylose yield of 87% was also obtained from switchgrass pretreated by [EMIM][Lys] at  
1548 140°C for 1 h.

## 1549 **8.6 Challenges with in-situ enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses in aqueous-IL media**

1550 Unlike water and buffers, which are capable of dissolving the enzymes without unfolding their  
1551 active structure, the biocatalysis activity in organic solvents may be hampered by a variety of  
1552 factors. Most cellulases and other hydrolytic enzymes are deactivated in the presence of ILs,  
1553 even low concentration.<sup>535,536</sup> A comprehensive review on enzymatic hydrolysis of  
1554 lignocelluloses in the presence of ionic liquids, or the so-called in-situ or one-pot pretreatment  
1555 and hydrolysis, has been recently published by Wahlström and Suurnäkki.<sup>537</sup> This review was  
1556 mainly focused on the ways to keep cellulase enzyme active for enzymatic hydrolysis in the  
1557 presence of IL. The hydrolytic enzymes stabilization techniques include enzyme immobilization,  
1558 e.g., by encapsulation<sup>538</sup> or thermostabilization.<sup>539</sup> Besides, the discovery and development of IL-  
1559 tolerant enzymes,<sup>540,541</sup> e.g., enzymes isolated from thermophilic and halophilic microbes,<sup>542,543</sup>  
1560 are of great importance in this regard. A review on various cellulase stabilization techniques for  
1561 the single-step process and the design of enzyme compatible biomass-dissolving ILs was  
1562 recently published by Elgharbawy et al.<sup>544</sup> The recent trends in IL-tolerant enzymes and  
1563 microorganisms was also critically reviewed by Portillo and Saadeddin<sup>545</sup> and Xu et al.<sup>546</sup>  
1564 It is notable here to mention that the residual ILs in the enzymatic hydrolysates inhibit the  
1565 growth and productivity of microorganisms in downstream and fermentation processes.<sup>547,548</sup> The  
1566 residual [EMIM][OAc] in the hydrolysates (higher than 0.1%) was reported to inhibit the growth  
1567 and ethanol production by *S. cerevisiae*, suggested due to a potential synergistic effect between  
1568 this particular combination of anion and cation.<sup>549</sup> Water-wash step results in a significant sugars  
1569 lost and generation of large amounts of wastewater. To address this issue, Xu et al.<sup>550</sup> recently

1570 developed a one-pot conversion process via using dilute bio-based ILs to produce high-titer  
1571 cellulosic ethanol. Moreover, a novel CBP process was developed for ethanol production using  
1572 IL pretreatment by cellulase-displaying yeast and approximately 90% ethanol yield was  
1573 reported.<sup>551</sup>

1574 **Table 8.** Improvement in enzymatic digestibility of different lignocelluloses pretreated by ionic liquids (ILs)

Ionic liquid	Substrate	Pretreatment conditions	Enzymatic digestibility	Ref.
[BMIM][Cl]	Avicel	130, 140, or 150°C for 10, 30, 60, 120, or 180 min, 5% biomass (w/w) loading	Maximum ~80% cellulose conversion to glucose after 24 h of enzymatic hydrolysis	551
[EMIM][CH <sub>3</sub> COO]	$\alpha$ -Cellulose	110°C for 40 min, 2% (w/v) cellulose loading	61% yield of glucose at 76 h	553
	Medium fibers of cellulose		69% yield of glucose at 76 h	
	Long fibers of cellulose		75% yield of glucose at 76 h	
	Microcrystalline cellulose		71% yield of glucose at 76 h	
[EMIM][MeO(H)PO <sub>2</sub> ]	$\alpha$ -Cellulose		67% yield of glucose at 76 h	
	Medium fibers of cellulose		86% yield of glucose at 76 h	
	Long fibers of cellulose		88% yield of glucose at 76 h	
	Microcrystalline cellulose		75% yield of glucose at 76 h	
[BMIM][OAc]	<i>Typha capensis</i> (TC)	110°C for 6 h, 5.0 g IL per 0.26 g TC	Maximum reducing sugar yield of 82.4 g/100 g	554
[EMIM][OAc]	Cellulose isolated from sugarcane bagasse	90°C for 6 h, 33.3 g IL per g cellulose	95.2% glucose yield	555
Cholinium amino acids ILs	Rice straw	90°C for 5 h	Maximum glucose and xylose yields of 84.0% and 42.1%, respectively	556
Cholinium lysine IL ([Ch][Lys] IL)-water mixtures	Rice straw	20% [Ch][Lys]-water mixture at 90°C for 1 h	Maximum sugar yields of 81% for glucose and 48% for xylose	557
[EMIM][OAc]	Sugarcane bagasse	150°C, 90 min and 5% bagasse in IL	83% and 21% glucan and xylan digestibility, respectively	558
[EMIM][OAc]	Energy cane bagasse	120°C for 30 min, 5% (w/w) biomass loading	87.0% and 64.3% glucan and xylan digestibility, respectively	125
[EMIM][OAc]	<i>Pinus radiata</i> compression wood	120°C for 3 h	93% glucan digestibility, 65% xylan digestibility, and 39% mannan digestibility after 24 h	559
1-hexylpyridinium chloride	Avicel and bagasse	80°C or 100°C, 5% (w/w) loading	Over 95% conversion to glucose after 24 h for Avicel, and 1–3-fold higher conversion than untreated biomass for bagasse	560
1-butylimidazolium hydrogen sulfate	<i>Miscanthus giganteus</i>	120°C for 15 min up to 24 h, 10% (w/v) biomass loading	Recovery of up to 90% of the glucan as fermentable glucose and up to 39% saccharification yield for hemicellulose	561
[EMIM][OAc]-DMSO solutions	Eucalyptus	Ratios of 4:1, 3:2, 2:3 and 1:4 (v/v) [EMIM][OAc]-to-DMSO, 15% (w/v) biomass loading, at temperatures ranging from 80 to	95% of glucose theoretical maximum yield and up to 65% xylose yield	562

		140°C		
Chloride, acetate, and formate based IL	MCC	90°C for 20 min	100% digestibility by using [BMIM][Cl]	563
[EMIM][OAc]	Rice husk	100°C for 10 h, 1.5% (w/v) biomass loading	42.1% reducing sugar yield	501
[EMIM][OAc]	Agave bagasse (AGB) and switchgrass (SWG)	120 and 160°C for 3 h and 15% biomass loading	Increase in TRS by 100% for SWG and by 183% for AGB	500
[EMIM][OAc]	Bagasse	Optimum condition: 145°C, 15 min and 14 wt.% solid loading	69.7% of RS yield	564
[EMIM][OAc]	Sugarcane bagasse	8 min at 140°C, 25 wt.% biomass loading	Glucose yields of more than 90% after 24 h of enzymatic saccharification and maximum xylose yield of ca. 85%	479
[EMIM][OAc]	Switchgrass	160°C and 3 h, 15% biomass loading	Glucose and xylose yields of 94.8% and 62.2%, respectively	480
1-Butyl-3-methylimidazolium methyl sulfate and 1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium hydrogen sulfate	<i>Miscanthus giganteus</i> , pine ( <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> ), and willow ( <i>Salix viminalis</i> )	120°C and 2 h, 10% (w/v) biomass loading	Up to 90% of the glucose and 25% of the hemicellulose by the combined ionic liquid pretreatment and the enzymatic hydrolysis	565
[EMIM][OAc]	<i>Eucalyptus globulus</i>	120°C for 3 h, 9.7 g IL and 0.3 g biomass	37 and 30% glucose and xylose yields, respectively, after 4 h enzymatic hydrolysis	566
1-Ethyl-3-methylimidazolium acetate	Wheat straw	Temperature (130–170°C), time (0.5–5.5 h) and ionic liquid concentration (0–100%), biomass loading 5% (w/w)	71.4% sugars recovery at optimum conditions of 158°C, IL concentration, 49.5% (w/w), and 3.6 h	567
[EMIM][OAc]	Triticale straw	150°C for 90 min, 1.5 g straw to 48.5 g of water-IL mixture	81% fermentable sugar yield	568
[EMIM][OAc] and [BMIM][Cl]	Cotton cellulose	Microwave irradiation or 110°C for 30 min, 2% (w/v) biomass loading	At least 12-fold and by 50-fold enhancement in enzymatic hydrolysis at 110°C and microwave irradiation, respectively	569
[BMIM][Cl]	Sugarcane bagasse	Temperatures (110–160°C) and times (30–180 min); 0.25 g bagasse in 5 g IL (≤5% impurities and 2% moisture)	Optimum condition: 150°C for 90 min complete (100%) and rapid (3 h) glucan saccharification Up to 70% xylan solubilization	570
[BMIM][Cl]	Cotton	130°C for 20 min, 5% w/w	At least 4-fold enhancement on cellulose saccharification conversion	571
[EMIM][CH <sub>3</sub> COO]	Wood flour	Various temperatures, 5% w/w biomass loading	>90% conversion of cellulose	486



Choline acetate (ChOAc)	Bagasse	IL/ultrasound-assisted pretreatment (60 min at 24 kHz and a power of 35W), 0.25 g bagasse in 5 g IL	Cellulose and hemicellulose saccharification percentages 80% and 72%, respectively, <i>in situ</i> saccharification for 48 h	572
Choline formate (ChFor), choline acetate (ChOAc), and choline propionate (ChPro)	Kenaf powders	Microwave heating or 110°C for 20 min, 5% w/w biomass loading	20% cellulose conversion for regular heating and 60-90% for microwave heating	573
[BMIM][Cl]	Sweet sorghum bagasse	110°C for 1 h, 10% w/w biomass loading	Approximately 40% conversion of cellulose after 60 h enzymatic hydrolysis	574
[BMIM][Cl]	<i>Populus tomentosa</i> Carr.	130°C, 0.5 g of the substrate and 9.5 g of the IL	92% glucose yield after 72 h enzymatic hydrolysis	349
[EMIM][Cl] and [EMIM][OAc]	Pine wood	80, 100, or 120°C for 3 h with stirring, 0.35 g wood and 7.0 g IL	Glucan conversions ranging from 23% to 84% with [EMIM][OAc] being more effective than [EMIM][Cl]	575
[BMIM][Cl]	Oil palm frond (OPF)	Temperatures less than 100°C and times less than 1 h, and maximum loadings of 10%	100% glucose recovery with pretreatment condition: 80°C, 15 min, and 10% solid loading	576
[EMIM][OAc]	<i>Panicum virgatum</i> (switchgrass)	90°C for 5 h, 10% (w/w) biomass loading	Glucose yield: 31%; Xylose yield: 29%	577
[EMIM][Lys]			Glucose yield: 70%; Xylose yield: 68%	
[Ch] [Lys]			Glucose yield: 42%; Xylose yield: 58%	
[Ch][OAc]			Glucose yield: 27%; Xylose yield: 23%	
[EMIM][OAc]		140°C for 1 h, 10% (w/w) biomass loading	Glucose yield: 65%; Xylose yield: 86%	
[EMIM][Lys]		Glucose yield: 59%; Xylose yield: 87%		
[Ch] [Lys]		Glucose yield: 61%; Xylose yield: 82%		
[Ch][OAc]		Glucose yield: 55%; Xylose yield: 79%		
[EMIM][OAc]	Poplar and switchgrass	120°C for 30 min, 5% (w/w) biomass loading	~70% and 46% glucan conversion after 24 h enzymatic hydrolysis for poplar and switchgrass, respectively	578
[EMIM][MeO(H)PO <sub>2</sub> ] and [EMIM][CH <sub>3</sub> COO]	Cotton cellulose	45 and 25°C for 20 min, 2%, w/v biomass loading	Glucose yield after 24 h of enzymatic hydrolysis: 58.5% and 45.4%	579
[EMIM][OAc]	Spruce and oak sawdust	110°C for 40 min, 2% w/v biomass loading	Up to 7 times increase in enzymatic saccharification compare with the untreated substrate	580
[AMIM][Cl]	Cotton-based waste textiles were	90, 110, and 130°C until 2% (w/w) biomass was dissolved	7 times higher yield of fermentable sugars than untreated fabrics	581
[EMIM][OAc]	Oil palm empty fruit bunch (OPEFB)	130°C, 2 h, 5% (w/w) biomass loading	95.5% enzymatic digestibility of glucan	582
[BMIM][Cl]			54.8% enzymatic digestibility of glucan	
MTBS			22.0% enzymatic digestibility of glucan	
[EMIM][DEP]			48.9% enzymatic digestibility of glucan	

[EMIM][DEP]	Wheat straw	130°C for 30 min, 4% (w/w) biomass loading	54.8% reducing sugar yield after being enzymatically hydrolyzed for 12 h	583
ChOAc	Bamboo powder	110°C for 60 min, and ultrasonic pretreatment in the same IL at 25°C for 60 min, 0.5 g bamboo in 5 g IL	55% and 92% cellulose saccharification for regular heating and ultrasonic pretreatment, respectively	584
[EMIM][OAc]	Beechwood chips	115°C for 1.5 h, 500 mg or 1 g of the wood in IL to obtain a mass of 10 g	Cellulose conversion of 90.2 wt.% for hydrolysis times of 72 h	585

1575

1576 Another challenge in enzymatic in-situ saccharification of lignocelluloses is the recovery of  
1577 sugars produced during the hydrolysis in IL media. Chromatographic techniques<sup>586</sup> and  
1578 membrane-based methods<sup>587</sup> have been suggested for the separation and recovery of sugars and  
1579 IL from biomass hydrolysates. This challenge also applies in the case of acid-catalyzed  
1580 hydrolysis in IL,<sup>588</sup> and it is considered a major challenge and a drawback in using IL as a  
1581 pretreatment agent. However, in most cases, the recovery of sugars and the recycle of IL occur  
1582 simultaneously in a single process.

### 1583 **8.7 Recovery and reuse of ionic liquids**

1584 Due to the current high price of ILs for an economically viable pretreatment process, efficient  
1585 recovery and recycling of ILs is vital.<sup>589-592</sup> Besides, the wastage of ILs can cause environmental  
1586 issues associated with slow degradation and toxicity to downstream processes<sup>589,590</sup> Mai et al.<sup>593</sup>  
1587 reviewed the different methods for recovery of ILs in detail. Here, we discuss briefly the  
1588 methods of ILs recovery with application in the IL pretreatment of lignocelluloses.

1589 The most widely used method for recovery and recycling of ILs from IL-anti-solvent-  
1590 lignocellulose systems is distillation.<sup>580,590,594-596</sup> The method consists of evaporating anti-solvent  
1591 (e.g., water and alcohol) after removing precipitated lignocellulose from the pretreatment media.  
1592 Since a large quantity of precipitating solvent is required to prevent gel phase formation, the  
1593 evaporation step needs a lot of energy and often presents environmental problems. When water is  
1594 used for the precipitation, the situation is even worse, because of its high specific heat capacity  
1595 and high solubility of produced biomass compounds, e.g., monomeric and small oligomeric  
1596 carbohydrates.<sup>590,596</sup> Approximately, 85–90% recovery of [EMIM][OAc] was reported in a IL-  
1597 water system via distillation by Qui et al.<sup>594</sup>

1598 The ability of ILs to form aqueous biphasic systems with a kosmotropic anion, e.g., phosphate,  
1599 carbonate, or sulfate, was first reported by Gutowski et al.,<sup>597</sup> which can be utilized to recycle  
1600 hydrophilic ILs from aqueous solution. The upper IL-rich phase can be easily recovered by  
1601 simple decantation or a magnetic field. However, further separation is required in order to extract  
1602 water and remaining monosaccharide hydrolysates from IL solution.<sup>598</sup> The recovery of ILs in  
1603 these systems depends on the salt type and concentration as well as the IL cation and anion  
1604 type.<sup>599</sup> A recovery of over 95.0% for [BMIM][OAc] in K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>-containing systems (pH 12-13)  
1605 was reported.<sup>599</sup>

1606 Apart from these traditional separation methods, recently, the so-called green processes were  
1607 developed based on chromatography (resin and alumina column chromatography)<sup>598,600</sup> and  
1608 electrodialysis<sup>601-603</sup> for the ILs recovery.

1609 Unfortunately, the recovered ILs do not sometimes show the same performance in the  
1610 pretreatment as their virgin forms.<sup>594,604</sup> Qiu et al.<sup>594</sup> reported a decrease in recycled  
1611 [EMIM][OAc], by evaporation, performance in pretreatment of energy cane bagasse. This  
1612 phenomenon could be attributed to the accumulation of IL's degradation products in the  
1613 pretreatment process which affect the recycling efficiency and properties of IL. Besides, the  
1614 recycled ILs may contain carbohydrate monomers and oligomers and biomass decomposition  
1615 products. It is most likely for recycled IL that have the both of mentioned impurities that  
1616 negatively affect its performance in pretreatment.<sup>175</sup> On the other hand, Auxenfans et al.<sup>580</sup>  
1617 reported the same ability and similar efficiency of recycled [EMIM][OAc], via distillation by  
1618 rotary evaporator, as fresh in enzymatic saccharification performance for pretreatment of  
1619 industrial wood sawdust. In another study, they again reported the similar performance of two  
1620 recycled imidazolium-based ILs in maintaining their efficiency to pretreat cellulose.<sup>579</sup>

## 1621 **8.8 IL pretreatment of lignocelluloses for enhanced biogas and renewable chemicals** 1622 **production**

1623 Different pretreatment methods for enhanced biogas production from lignocelluloses have been  
1624 comprehensively reviewed by Zheng et al.<sup>69</sup> Mancini et al.<sup>605</sup> also reviewed the solvent  
1625 pretreatments of lignocellulosic materials to enhance biogas production. Nonetheless, there are  
1626 few studies in the literature on the enhancement of biogas production from lignocelluloses by  
1627 using IL pretreatment. Gao et al.<sup>606</sup> pretreated water hyacinth, rice straw, mango leaves, and  
1628 spruce by [C<sub>n</sub>MIM][Cl] (n = 2, 4, and 6) at different conditions and evaluated the effect of the  
1629 pretreatment on biogas production. The maximum enhancement of biogas production was  
1630 obtained by pretreatment with [BMIM][Cl] at 120°C for 2 h for water hyacinth followed by  
1631 spruce, while maximum methane production from rice straw and mango leaves, i.e., 233 and 125  
1632 mL/g carbohydrates, was obtained for pretreatment at 140°C for 2 h and 140°C for 8 h,  
1633 respectively. They also obtained an increase in biogas yield and methane concentration by 16.3–  
1634 97.6% and 13.2–28.3%, respectively, from water hyacinth by [BMIM][Cl] and DMSO co-  
1635 solvent pretreatment at 120°C for 120 min.<sup>607</sup> Li and Xu<sup>608</sup> reported severe toxicity of  
1636 imidazolium-based ILs in anaerobic digestion of grass (1:10 ratio). However, they reported a low  
1637 toxicity and high recyclability potential for [BMIM][OAc] in the methane production of 221  
1638 mL/g-VS from grass.

1639 Most of studies on using IL pretreatment for the production of renewable products from  
1640 lignocelluloses have focused on the hydrolysis of pretreated biomass into sugar-rich hydrolysates  
1641 (cf. Section 8.5), which are then used by microorganisms for carbon and energy sources, e.g., for  
1642 microbial lipid production. For example, Gong et al.<sup>609</sup> prepared corn stover solids by  
1643 [EMIM][OAc]–N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP) pretreatment at 140°C and converted the pretreated

1644 solids to microbial lipids by *Cryptococcus curvatus* via a simultaneous saccharification and  
1645 enhanced lipid production process. They obtained maximum 112 mg/g pretreated biomass lipid  
1646 yield with efficient co-utilization of cellulose and hemicellulose. Xie et al.<sup>610</sup> also used 20%  
1647 (mole fraction) [EMIM][OAc] in NMP at 140°C for 60 min to pretreat corn stover followed by  
1648 enzymatic hydrolysis for the cultivation of *Rhodospiridium toruloides* Y4 for lipid production.  
1649 The oleaginous microorganism utilized both C<sub>6</sub> and C<sub>5</sub> sugars in the hydrolyzates and produced a  
1650 moderate 15.2 g.L<sup>-1</sup> biomass yield and 36.4% lipid yield. Bokinsky et al.<sup>611</sup> reported the  
1651 synthesis of biofuels, i.e., fatty acid ethyl esters, butanol, and pinene, from [EMIM][OAc]  
1652 pretreated switchgrass using engineered *Escherichia coli* which can express cellulase, xylanase,  
1653 β-glucosidase, and xylobiosidase enzymes. They reported that the IL pretreatment made the  
1654 biomass completely susceptible to hydrolysis.

1655 On the using of ILs for renewable chemicals production from lignocelluloses, Huang et al.<sup>612</sup>  
1656 evaluated the effects of residual [EMIM][Cl], [EMIM][DEP], and [EMIM][OAc] on the lipid  
1657 production by oleaginous yeast *Rhodospiridium toruloides* AS 2.1389. By adjusting pH to 6.0 in  
1658 the presence of 30 mM ILs, minor inhibition effects were reported, while the presence of 60 mM  
1659 ILs caused a significant inhibition on the yeast. Liu et al.<sup>613</sup> also reported that the residual ILs in  
1660 the hydrolysate of rice straw inhibited the growth and lipid accumulation by *Geotrichum*  
1661 *fermentans*. The inhibition was induced by both anion and cation of the ILs used, and the side  
1662 chain of cation showed a clear inhibition.

1663 Varanasi et al.<sup>614</sup> focused on the production of lignin-based renewable chemicals from different  
1664 lignocelluloses by selective breakdown of lignin using [EMIIM][OAc] pretreatment at 120 and  
1665 160°C for 6 h. The generated chemicals, (i.e., phenols, guaiacols, syringols, eugenol, and  
1666 catechols), their oxidized products (i.e., vanillin, vanillic acid, and syringaldehyde), and their

1667 easily derivatized hydrocarbons (i.e., benzene, toluene, xylene, styrene, biphenyls, and  
1668 cyclohexane) were produced from lignin by tuning the process conditions. The production of  
1669 levulinic acid directly during the IL pretreatment was reported in some studies.<sup>615,616</sup> Muranaka  
1670 et al.<sup>616</sup> successfully converted 60.7 % (72.9 mol%) of cellulose into levulinic acid by using  
1671 [EMIM][Br] and [EMIM][P] at 80-120°C for 1-6 h under stirring. Sun et al.<sup>615</sup> used a series of  
1672 heteropolyacid (HPA) ILs to catalyze one-pot depolymerization of cellulose into glucose and  
1673 subsequent levulinic acid (up to a 60% yield) in a water–methyl isobutyl ketone (MIBK)  
1674 biphasic system. Xiao et al.<sup>617</sup> optimized the catalytic conversion of cellulose into HMF by AlCl<sub>3</sub>  
1675 in DMSO–[BMIM][Cl] mixtures. They obtained a maximum HMF yield of 54.9% from  
1676 cellulose at 150°C after 9 h in a mixed solvent of DMSO–[BMIM][Cl] (10 wt.%).

## 1677 **8.9 Techno-economic analysis of ionic liquid pretreatment**

1678 For economic evaluation of IL pretreatment of lignocelluloses, Sen et al.<sup>618</sup> identified the IL cost  
1679 as the major cost driver in IL pretreatment. They suggested the lower IL consumption and/or  
1680 effective separation strategies to improve the economy of IL pretreatment. Konda et al.<sup>619</sup>  
1681 compared the cost drivers and economic potential of two variants of IL pretreatment for ethanol  
1682 production: first based on complete removal of the IL prior to hydrolysis and second based on  
1683 one-pot process. At a high biomass loading of 50%, both routes were reported to be  
1684 economically viable with a minimum ethanol selling price of \$6.3/gal. With more reduced water  
1685 and acid/base consumption in the first and second routes, respectively, improved pretreatment  
1686 efficiency, and by lignin valorization, the minimum ethanol selling price could be reduced to  
1687 \$3.2 for the former route and \$2.8 for the later route. Baral and Shah<sup>620</sup> conducted a techno-  
1688 economic comparison study on [EMIM][OAc] and sulfuric acid pretreatment of corn stover,  
1689 poplar, and switchgrass, and estimated sugar production cost of 2.7, 3.2, and 3.0 \$/kg,

1690 respectively. They further reported that optimistic considerations of at least 97% IL recovery,  
1691 less than \$1/kg IL cost, and >90% heat recovery are required to have an economically  
1692 competitive IL pretreatment. To improve the process economy, George et al.<sup>621</sup> attempted to  
1693 lower the cost of IL, which is one of the main impediments to IL utilization in the pretreatment  
1694 step, by designing a number of low-cost and stable protic ILs based upon the [HSO<sub>4</sub>] anion with  
1695 promising potential in the pretreatment. The most effective solvent, triethylammonium hydrogen  
1696 sulfate IL, demonstrated approximately 75% as effective as [C<sub>2</sub>C<sub>1</sub>IM][OAc] for switchgrass. A  
1697 set of new low-cost RTILs based on butylammonium prepared by reacting carboxylic acids with  
1698 aliphatic amines cation under ambient conditions was also synthesized and characterized by de  
1699 Andrade Neto et al.<sup>622</sup> for lignocellulose hydrolysis applications. Among them, n-  
1700 butylammonium acetate favored the subsequent acid hydrolysis of corn fiber. Oleskowicz-Popiel  
1701 et al.<sup>623</sup> also reported the acidolysis of IL pretreated lignocelluloses as a more economically  
1702 viable route than using costly enzymes for saccharification. They further calculated that the  
1703 minimum ethanol selling price could be reduced to \$4.00/gal, when the performance of the  
1704 hydrolysis, extraction, and sugar recovery is improved. Socha et al.<sup>624</sup> synthesized some tertiary  
1705 amine-based ILs from aromatic aldehydes derived from vanillin, p-anisaldehyde, and furfural,  
1706 and confirmed their effectiveness in switchgrass pretreatment. Their approach of producing  
1707 renewable ILs from lignocelluloses in a so-called “closed-loop” can be a solution for the  
1708 drawback of expensive IL in the pretreatment.

## 1709 **8.10 Present status and future prospects of IL pretreatment**

1710 Taking all these points into consideration, ILs, as powerful non-derivatizing cellulose solvents,  
1711 have been recently subjected to vast studies for lignocellulose dissolution and regeneration. The  
1712 promising features of using ILs for biomass pretreatment are negligible vapor pressure, thermal



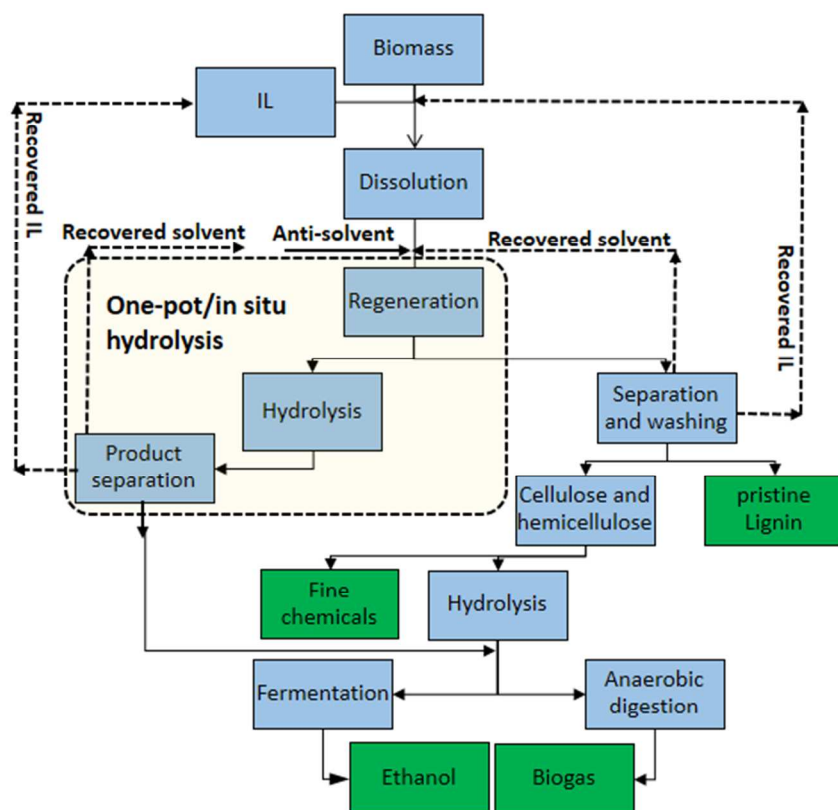
1713 stability, non-flammability, and high polarity, and being “green” solvent in many cases.<sup>625-627</sup>  
1714 They are capable of fractionating variety of lignocelluloses, reordering or restructuring the  
1715 hydrogen bonds in cellulose network, decreasing cellulose crystallinity, and increasing cellulose  
1716 accessibility to cellulases. The pretreatment requires low equipment costs with low energy  
1717 consumption. The regenerated materials are more susceptible to enzymatic hydrolysis than the  
1718 untreated form, with comparable or even superior yields of fermentable sugars, than the  
1719 conventional pretreatments.<sup>628,629</sup> By adjusting ILs’ anion and cation, different ILs are  
1720 synthesized to tune their properties. Mora-Pale et al.<sup>630</sup> stated that lignin released during RTIL  
1721 pretreatment of lignocelluloses is likely to be far more “pristine” than Kraft lignin, which have  
1722 general applications in phenol-formaldehyde replacements, conversion into liquid fuels  
1723 following hydrogenative depolymerization, or possibly into specific low molecular weight  
1724 chemicals.

1725 A process diagram for bioconversion of lignocelluloses to ethanol and biogas using IL  
1726 pretreatment was proposed in Figure 15. The process can be applied for production of other  
1727 fermentative chemicals via sugar platform as well. Besides, this process is advantageous in  
1728 production of other byproducts, which can improve the overall process economy.

1729 However, IL pretreatment of lignocelluloses is facing several technological and economic  
1730 challenges. Although some efforts have been made to design low-cost ILs<sup>621,631</sup> (as discussed in  
1731 Section 8.9), still a major obstacle in implication of many ILs at large scale is their high price.  
1732 Efficient recovery and recycling of ILs are crucial in order to reduce the inhibitory effects of ILs  
1733 on subsequent enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation. Besides, the residual ILs on waste stream  
1734 can cause environmental problems depending on their degradability.<sup>632</sup> Although research is  
1735 underway using amino acids to synthesize biodegradable ILs, most ILs for biomass processing

1736 are not easily biodegradable. However, a cost-effective technology, despite the ease of recycling  
 1737 via distillation, is needed to make the process competitive to conventional pretreatment  
 1738 strategies. This problem is not only for ILs recovery, but also for the anti-solvent used in the  
 1739 regeneration process. Although many ILs, e.g., [EMIM][OAc] and [AMIM][Cl], were reported  
 1740 to be excellent solvents for cellulose dissolution,<sup>632</sup> the selection of ILs for biomass pretreatment  
 1741 should compromise between solubilizing power and compatibility with enzymes and/or  
 1742 organisms. In case of acidic ILs, the rate of formation of degradation products should be  
 1743 manipulated by the side chains of the cation. Not all, but some ILs are corrosive, toxic, and  
 1744 hygroscopic, which should be utilized with care.

1745



1746

1747 **Figure 15.** A process diagram for IL pretreatment of lignocelluloses for ethanol or biogas production  
 1748 applying two routes: 1) one-pot/in-situ hydrolysis and 2) separated enzymatic hydrolysis and  
 1749 fermentation, with IL and solvent recycling.

## 1750 9 Comparison of ILs, CPA, and NMMO pretreatment

1751 A few studies compared the effectiveness of the IL, CPA, and NMMO pretreatment on  
1752 improving enzymatic hydrolysis yield and fuels/chemicals production.<sup>165, 386, 571, 633-637</sup> Wheat  
1753 straw was pretreated with CPA (85%, 50°C for 1.5 h), NMMO (130 °C for 2 h), and IL  
1754 ([AMIM][Cl], 110 °C for 1 h) and the results showed that the most prominent difference in  
1755 chemical composition of wheat straw was >90% solubilization of xylan due to CPA  
1756 pretreatment, while for the other two treatments, xylan was solubilized <10%.<sup>633</sup> Phosphoric  
1757 acid acts as a Brønsted acid catalyst and generally promotes the hydrolysis of glycosidic  
1758 bonds in cellulose\hemicellulose, which leads to considerably higher solubilization of xylan.  
1759 Moreover, cellulose hydrolysis followed the order of CPA > NMMO > [AMIM][Cl].  
1760 Similarly, CPA was more successful in pretreatment of corn stover than IL, whereas,  
1761 compared to 96% glucan digestibility of corn stover pretreated with CPA, a 55% glucan  
1762 digestibility was obtained after pretreatment with [BMIM][Cl]. A tradeoff between cellulose  
1763 disruption and the inhibitory effects of the presence of residual lignin and residual cellulose  
1764 solvent in the pretreated biomass were reported as the main reasons for incomplete  
1765 hydrolysis for IL pretreatment. However, cellulose digestibilities of 100% and 92% were  
1766 obtained with CPA and [BMIM][Cl], respectively, for Avicel cellulose as a substrate.<sup>634</sup>  
1767 In a study, high glucose yields were obtained for rice straw following pretreatment with  
1768 NMMO and [BMIM][OAc], and the obtained yields were comparable for both  
1769 pretreatments.<sup>381</sup> Crystallinity index and total crystallinity of the substrate were quite similar  
1770 for both pretreatments. Similarly, the glucan conversion (after 72 h) for *Populus tomentosa*  
1771 pretreated with IL ([BMIM][Cl] at 130°C), NMMO (130°C for 30 min), and CPA (85% at  
1772 room temperature) were reported 80%, 82%, and 92%, respectively.<sup>635</sup> The results also

1773 showed that the hydrolysis rate for IL pretreated sample was higher than that of the CPA  
1774 pretreated sample. These results were possibly due to transformation of cellulose I to  
1775 amorphous cellulose and cellulose II in IL and CPA pretreatments, respectively. CPA was  
1776 reported as a better cellulose solvent than NMMO and [BMIM][Cl] in improving the  
1777 saccharification rate and yield of cotton cellulose due to the high specific surface area and  
1778 low DP for CPA pretreated cellulose.<sup>636</sup>

1779 On the other hand, IL pretreatment ([EMIM][Br] and [EMIM][P]) was reported to be more  
1780 effective than CPA pretreatment in converting cellulosic substrates to levulinic acid.<sup>637</sup>

1781 Decrease in cellulose crystallinity, solubilization of cellulose, and IL interaction with  
1782 cellulose were the determinant factors for higher yields.

1783 In summary, the effectiveness of different cellulose solvents on the pretreatment of  
1784 lignocelluloses is strongly dependent on biomass type and final chemicals produced. In  
1785 contrast with phosphoric acid, residual ILs and NMMO cause inhibitory effects on  
1786 biotechnological downstream processes.

1787

## 1788 **10 Concluding remarks**

1789 Regarding the high worldwide fuel demand and the significant potential for biomass conversion  
1790 to offset fossil fuel usage, a high number of studies and efforts have been made in the past  
1791 several decades in the cellulosic fuel area. The cellulosic fuels production process involves four  
1792 major steps of biomass preparation, pretreatment, hydrolysis, and fermentation, with the  
1793 pretreatment step being one of the most cost contributing and the rate and yield limiting step.  
1794 Giving the significant ability to fractionating lignocellulosic structure, the cellulose solvents are  
1795 excellent starting points for industrial biorefinery applications. Although this category of

1796 pretreatment has several advantages over other conventional pretreatments, which was the focus  
1797 of this review, several issues should be addressed to make the process economically and  
1798 environmentally viable. One of the promising features of cellulose solvents for the pretreatment  
1799 of lignocelluloses is associated with their properties as “green” solvent. They should have  
1800 negligible vapor pressure to help their recyclability, and should be easily biodegradable. Using  
1801 cellulose solvents for the pretreatment of lignocelluloses is advantageous due to their application  
1802 at high solid loadings and relatively low pressure/temperatures with no/less chemical  
1803 modification and inhibitory byproducts formation. The solvents can be oriented towards different  
1804 purposes for the pretreatment of lignocelluloses. They can be selected for (1) separation of  
1805 mainly cellulose, (2) separation of mainly hemicellulose, (3) separation of mainly lignin, (4)  
1806 opening the compact structure, (5) regeneration and structural modification, (6) cellulose  
1807 crystallinity reduction; although more than one of these actions typically take place. Organic  
1808 cellulose solvents, e.g., concentrated phosphoric acid and concentrated NaOH, are capable of  
1809 removing and/or reorganizing the hydrogen bond network structure of cellulose, decreasing  
1810 cellulose crystallinity, and enhancing cellulose accessibility to cellulases, and consequently  
1811 enhancing glucan digestibility even at low cellulase loadings that is vital to reduce overall  
1812 process cost. There are some cellulose solvents, e.g., NMMO, that modify the structure of  
1813 lignocelluloses by dissolution and regeneration of the whole biomass, without significant  
1814 lignin/hemicellulose removal. Meanwhile, ILs are target-oriented solvents that can be designed  
1815 to separate specific part of lignocelluloses. The high revenues from co-products (acetic acid,  
1816 lignin, and hemicelluloses) of the pretreatment can drastically improve the economy of the  
1817 cellulosic fuels. However, the cellulose solvent-based pretreatment of lignocelluloses is still in its  
1818 early stage of development, mainly in the laboratory scale, and facing several technological and

1819 economic challenges. The efficient recovery of the solvents, which is usually a high energy  
1820 intensive process, is necessary because of not only the solvents' high price, but also because of  
1821 inhibitory effects of the solvents on subsequent processes. Furthermore, substantial reduction in  
1822 the use of chemicals (both the cellulose solvents and organic solvents) is required in order to  
1823 have an economically competitive process.

## 1824 **Acknowledgments**

1825 The corresponding author would like acknowledge support from the Office of Biological and  
1826 Environmental Research in the US Department of Energy (DOE) Office of Science through the  
1827 BioEnergy Science Center (BESC) and the Center for Bioenergy Innovation (CBI), both at Oak  
1828 Ridge National Laboratory.

## 1829 **References**

- 1830 1. F. H. Reboledo, F. Lidon, F. Pessoa and J. C. Ramalho, *Trends Biotechnol.*, 2016, **34**, 3-6.
- 1831 2. N. Gaurav, S. Sivasankari, G. S. Kiran, A. Ninawe and J. Selvin, *Renewable Sustainable Energy*  
1832 *Rev.*, 2017, **73**, 205-214.
- 1833 3. S. N. Naik, V. V. Goud, P. K. Rout and A. K. Dalai, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2010,  
1834 **14**, 578-597.
- 1835 4. W. J. Orts and C. M. McMahan, *BioEnergy Res.*, 2016, **9**, 430-446.
- 1836 5. C. Dellomonaco, F. Fava and R. Gonzalez, *Microb. Cell Fact.*, 2010, **9**, 1-15.
- 1837 6. S. Zinoviev, F. Müller-Langer, P. Das, N. Bertero, P. Fornasiero, M. Kaltschmitt, G. Centi and  
1838 S. Miertus, *ChemSusChem*, 2010, **3**, 1106-1133.
- 1839 7. B. Antizar-Ladislao and J. L. Turrion-Gomez, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2008, **2**, 455-469.
- 1840 8. L. R. Lynd, J. H. Cushman, R. J. Nichols and C. E. Wyman, *Science*, 1991, **251**, 1318-1323.
- 1841 9. L. M. Fulton, L. R. Lynd, A. Körner, N. Greene and L. R. Tonachel, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*,  
1842 2015, **9**, 476-483.
- 1843 10. L. R. Lynd, C. E. Wyman and T. U. Gerngross, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 1999, **15**, 777-793.

- 1844 11. Y. Sun and J. Cheng, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2002, **83**, 1-11.
- 1845 12. S. Behera, R. Arora, N. Nandhagopal and S. Kumar, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2014,  
1846 **36**, 91-106.
- 1847 13. A. Alaswad, M. Dassisti, T. Prescott and A. G. Olabi, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2015,  
1848 **51**, 1446-1460.
- 1849 14. K. Kumar, S. Ghosh, I. Angelidaki, S. L. Holdt, D. B. Karakashev, M. A. Morales and D. Das,  
1850 *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2016, **65**, 235-249.
- 1851 15. E. Molina Grima, E. H. Belarbi, F. G. Acién Fernández, A. Robles Medina and Y. Chisti,  
1852 *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2003, **20**, 491-515.
- 1853 16. C. Carere, R. Sparling, N. Cicek and D. Levin, *Int. J. Mol. Sci.*, 2008, **9**, 1342.
- 1854 17. S. V. Vassilev and C. G. Vassileva, *Fuel*, 2016, **181**, 1-33.
- 1855 18. J. Lu, C. Sheahan and P. Fu, *Energy Environ. Sci.*, 2011, **4**, 2451-2466.
- 1856 19. J. Hill, E. Nelson, D. Tilman, S. Polasky and D. Tiffany, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 2006, **103**,  
1857 11206-11210.
- 1858 20. W. H. Liew, M. H. Hassim and D. K. S. Ng, *J. Cleaner Prod.*, 2014, **71**, 11-29.
- 1859 21. K. Dutta, A. Daverey and J.-G. Lin, *Renewable Energy*, 2014, **69**, 114-122.
- 1860 22. D. C. Holzman, *Environ. Health Perspect.*, 2008, **116**, A246-A252.
- 1861 23. S. Spatari, Y. Zhang and H. L. MacLean, *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 2005, **39**, 9750-9758.
- 1862 24. R. Kumar, M. Tabatabaei, K. Karimi and I. Sárvári Horváth, *Biofuel Res. J.*, 2016, **3**, 347-356.
- 1863 25. M. A. Carriquiry, X. Du and G. R. Timilsina, *Energy Policy*, 2011, **39**, 4222-4234.
- 1864 26. H. Chen and W. Qiu, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2010, **28**, 556-562.
- 1865 27. P. R. Lennartsson, P. Erlandsson and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **165**, 3-8.
- 1866 28. H. Zabed, J. N. Sahu, A. Suely, A. N. Boyce and G. Faruq, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*,  
1867 2017, **71**, 475-501.
- 1868 29. B. Satari and K. Karimi, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2018, **102**, 1097-1117.
- 1869 30. P. V. Harris, F. Xu, N. E. Kreel, C. Kang and S. Fukuyama, *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 2014, **19**,  
1870 162-170.
- 1871 31. M. Balat, *Energy Convers. Manage.*, 2011, **52**, 858-875.

- 1872 32. K. Karimi, M. Tabatabaei, I. Sárvári Horváth and R. Kumar, *Biofuel Res. J.*, 2015, **2**, 301-308.
- 1873 33. M. Mascal, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2012, **6**, 483-493.
- 1874 34. P. Dürre, *Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci.*, 2008, **1125**, 353-362.
- 1875 35. P. Dürre, *Biotechnol. J.*, 2007, **2**, 1525-1534.
- 1876 36. P. Dürre, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2011, **22**, 331-336.
- 1877 37. K. Karimi, M. Tabatabaei, I. Sárvári Horváth and R. Kumar, *Biofuel Res. J.*, 2015, **2**, 301-308.
- 1878 38. M. Kumar and K. Gayen, *Appl. Energy*, 2011, **88**, 1999-2012.
- 1879 39. Y.-N. Zheng, L.-Z. Li, M. Xian, Y.-J. Ma, J.-M. Yang, X. Xu and D.-Z. He, *J. Ind. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2009, **36**, 1127-1138.
- 1881 40. V. García, J. Pääkkilä, H. Ojamo, E. Muurinen and R. L. Keiski, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2011, **15**, 964-980.
- 1882
- 1883 41. J. Cousin Saint Remi, T. Rémy, V. Van Hunskerken, S. van de Perre, T. Duerinck, M. Maes, D. De Vos, E. Gobechiya, C. E. A. Kirschhock, G. V. Baron and J. F. M. Denayer, *ChemSusChem*, 2011, **4**, 1074-1077.
- 1884
- 1885
- 1886 42. S. H. Ha, N. L. Mai and Y.-M. Koo, *Process Biochem.*, 2010, **45**, 1899-1903.
- 1887 43. P. Anbarasan, Z. C. Baer, S. Sreekumar, E. Gross, J. B. Binder, H. W. Blanch, D. S. Clark and F. D. Toste, *Nature*, 2012, **491**, 235-239.
- 1888
- 1889 44. S. Sreekumar, Z. C. Baer, A. Pazhamalai, G. Gunbas, A. Grippo, H. W. Blanch, D. S. Clark and F. D. Toste, *Nat. Protoc.*, 2015, **10**, 528-537.
- 1890
- 1891 45. G. Liu, W. Wei and W. Jin, *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2014, **2**, 546-560.
- 1892 46. N. Qureshi and H. P. Blaschek, *Renewable Energy*, 2001, **22**, 557-564.
- 1893 47. A. Morone and R. A. Pandey, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2014, **37**, 21-35.
- 1894 48. T. C. Ezeji, N. Qureshi and H. P. Blaschek, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2007, **18**, 220-227.
- 1895 49. J. Bertsch and V. Müller, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2015, **8**, 210.
- 1896 50. M. Tabatabaei, K. Karimi, I. Sárvári Horváth and R. Kumar, *Biofuel Res. J.*, 2015, **2**, 258-267.
- 1897 51. Q. Hu, M. Sommerfeld, E. Jarvis, M. Ghirardi, M. Posewitz, M. Seibert and A. Darzins, *The Plant J.*, 2008, **54**, 621-639.
- 1898
- 1899 52. Q. Li, W. Du and D. Liu, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2008, **80**, 749-756.



- 1900 53. X. Meng, J. Yang, X. Xu, L. Zhang, Q. Nie and M. Xian, *Renewable Energy*, 2009, **34**, 1-5.
- 1901 54. L. A. Garay, I. R. Sitepu, T. Cajka, I. Chandra, S. Shi, T. Lin, J. B. German, O. Fiehn and K. L.  
1902 Boundy-Mills, *J. Ind. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2016, **43**, 887-900.
- 1903 55. Y. Zheng, X. Yu, J. Zeng and S. Chen, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2012, **5**, 1-10.
- 1904 56. M.-H. Liang and J.-G. Jiang, *Prog. Lipid Res.*, 2013, **52**, 395-408.
- 1905 57. I. R. Sitepu, M. Jin, J. E. Fernandez, L. da Costa Sousa, V. Balan and K. L. Boundy-Mills, *Appl.*  
1906 *Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **98**, 7645-7657.
- 1907 58. C. Huang, X.-f. Chen, L. Xiong, X.-d. Chen, L.-l. Ma and Y. Chen, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2013, **31**,  
1908 129-139.
- 1909 59. S. Bellou, A. Makri, D. Sarris, K. Michos, P. Rentoumi, A. Celik, S. Papanikolaou and G.  
1910 Aggelis, *J. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **170**, 50-59.
- 1911 60. K. Kurosawa, S. J. Wewetzer and A. J. Sinskey, *J. Microb. Biochem. Technol.*, 2014, **6**, 254-259.
- 1912 61. B. Satari, K. Karimi, M. Taherzadeh and A. Zamani, *Int. J. Mol. Sci.*, 2016, **17**, 302.
- 1913 62. B. Satari, *PhD thesis*, Isfahan University of Technology, 2016.
- 1914 63. M. Enshaeieh, A. Abdoli, M. Madani and M. Bayat, *Int. J. Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 2015, **12**, 837-  
1915 846.
- 1916 64. F. B. Ahmad, Z. Zhang, W. O. S. Doherty and I. M. O'Hara, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2016,  
1917 **10**, 378-392.
- 1918 65. A. Yousuf, *Waste Manage.*, 2012, **32**, 2061-2067.
- 1919 66. M. Jin, P. J. Slininger, B. S. Dien, S. Waghmode, B. R. Moser, A. Orjuela, L. d. C. Sousa and V.  
1920 Balan, *Trends Biotechnol.*, 2015, **33**, 43-54.
- 1921 67. J.-C. Frigon and S. R. Guiot, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2010, **4**, 447-458.
- 1922 68. S. Kashi, B. Satari, M. Lundin, I. S. Horváth and M. Othman. *J. Environ. Chem. Eng.*, 2017, **5**,  
1923 6156-6164.
- 1924 69. Y. Zheng, J. Zhao, F. Xu and Y. Li, *Prog. Energy Combust. Sci.*, 2014, **42**, 35-53.
- 1925 70. C. Sawatdeenarunat, K. C. Surendra, D. Takara, H. Oechsner and S. K. Khanal, *Bioresour.*  
1926 *Technol.*, 2015, **178**, 178-186.
- 1927 71. S. Campanaro, L. Treu, P. G. Kougias, D. De Francisci, G. Valle and I. Angelidaki, *Biotechnol.*  
1928 *Biofuels*, 2016, **9**, 26.

- 1929 72. C.-L. Cheng, Y.-C. Lo, K.-S. Lee, D.-J. Lee, C.-Y. Lin and J.-S. Chang, *Bioresour. Technol.*,  
1930 2011, **102**, 8514-8523.
- 1931 73. A. Ghimire, L. Frunzo, F. Pirozzi, E. Trably, R. Escudie, P. N. L. Lens and G. Esposito, *Appl.*  
1932 *Energy*, 2015, **144**, 73-95.
- 1933 74. H. Zilouei and M. Taherdanak, in *Lignocellulose-Based Bioproducts*, ed. K. Karimi, Springer  
1934 International Publishing, Cham, 2015, pp. 253-288.
- 1935 75. J. A. Gimpel, V. Henríquez and S. P. Mayfield, *Front. Microbiol.*, 2015, **6**.
- 1936 76. G. Davila-Vazquez, S. Arriaga, F. Alatríste-Mondragón, A. de León-Rodríguez, L. M. Rosales-  
1937 Colunga and E. Razo-Flores, *Rev. Environ. Sci. Biotechnol.*, 2008, **7**, 27-45.
- 1938 77. M. Taherdanak, H. Zilouei and K. Karimi, *Int. J. Hydrogen Energy*, 2016, **41**, 167-173.
- 1939 78. P. Sinha and A. Pandey, *Int. J. Hydrogen Energy*, 2011, **36**, 7460-7478.
- 1940 79. J. Wang and W. Wan, *Int. J. Hydrogen Energy*, 2009, **34**, 799-811.
- 1941 80. S. Rittmann and C. Herwig, *Microb. Cell Fact.*, 2012, **11**, 1-18.
- 1942 81. J. X. W. Hay, T. Y. Wu, J. C. Juan and J. Md. Jahim, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2013, **7**, 334-  
1943 352.
- 1944 82. D.-J. Lee, K.-Y. Show and A. Su, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 8393-8402.
- 1945 83. K. Y. Show, D. J. Lee, J. H. Tay, C. Y. Lin and J. S. Chang, *Int. J. Hydrogen Energy*, 2012, **37**,  
1946 15616-15631.
- 1947 84. X. Liu, N. Ren, F. Song, C. Yang and A. Wang, *Prog. Nat. Sci.*, 2008, **18**, 253-258.
- 1948 85. Y.-H. P. Zhang, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2015, **33**, 1467-1483.
- 1949 86. I. Z. Boboescu, M. Ilie, V. D. Gherman, I. Mirel, B. Pap, A. Negrea, É. Kondorosi, T. Biró and G.  
1950 Maróti, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 1-15.
- 1951 87. N. H. M. Yasin, T. Mumtaz, M. A. Hassan and N. A. Abd Rahman, *J. Environ. Manage.*, 2013,  
1952 **130**, 375-385.
- 1953 88. N.-Q. Ren, L. Zhao, C. Chen, W.-Q. Guo and G.-L. Cao, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **215**, 92-99.
- 1954 89. I. A. Panagiotopoulos, R. R. Bakker, T. de Vrije, E. G. Koukios and P. A. M. Claassen, *Int. J.*  
1955 *Hydrogen Energy*, 2010, **35**, 7738-7747.
- 1956 90. T. de Vrije, G. G. de Haas, G. B. Tan, E. R. P. Keijsers and P. A. M. Claassen, *Int. J. Hydrogen*  
1957 *Energy*, 2002, **27**, 1381-1390.

- 1958 91. Y.-C. Lo, W.-C. Lu, C.-Y. Chen and J.-S. Chang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**, 5885-5891.
- 1959 92. L. Zhao, G.-L. Cao, A.-J. Wang, H.-Y. Ren, D. Dong, Z.-N. Liu, X.-Y. Guan, C.-J. Xu and N.-Q.  
1960 Ren, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **114**, 365-369.
- 1961 93. R. Datar, J. Huang, P.-C. Maness, A. Mohagheghi, S. Czernik and E. Chornet, *Int. J. Hydrogen  
1962 Energy*, 2007, **32**, 932-939.
- 1963 94. M. M. Arimi, J. Knodel, A. Kiprop, S. S. Namango, Y. Zhang and S.-U. Geißen, *Biomass  
1964 Bioenergy*, 2015, **75**, 101-118.
- 1965 95. P. C. Hallenbeck and D. Ghosh, *Trends Biotechnol.*, 2009, **27**, 287-297.
- 1966 96. R. Kleerebezem and M. C. M. van Loosdrecht, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2007, **18**, 207-212.
- 1967 97. C. Sambusiti, M. Bellucci, A. Zabaniotou, L. Beneduce and F. Monlau, *Renewable Sustainable  
1968 Energy Rev.*, 2015, **44**, 20-36.
- 1969 98. J. Woodward, S. M. Mattingly, M. Danson, D. Hough, N. Ward and M. Adams, *Nat. Biotech.*,  
1970 1996, **14**, 872-874.
- 1971 99. J. Woodward and M. Orr, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 1998, **14**, 897-902.
- 1972 100. X. Ye, Y. Wang, R. C. Hopkins, M. W. W. Adams, B. R. Evans, J. R. Mielenz and Y. H. P.  
1973 Zhang, *ChemSusChem*, 2009, **2**, 149-152.
- 1974 101. Y. H. P. Zhang, B. R. Evans, J. R. Mielenz, R. C. Hopkins and M. W. W. Adams, *PLoS ONE*,  
1975 2007, **2**.
- 1976 102. J. S. Van Dyk and B. I. Pletschke, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2012, **30**, 1458-1480.
- 1977 103. L. B. Davin, A. M. Patten, M. Jourdes and N. G. Lewis, in *Biomass recalcitrance: deconstructing  
1978 the plant cell wall for bioenergy*, ed. M. Himmel, 2009, pp. 213-305.
- 1979 104. S. Sun, S. Sun, X. Cao and R. Sun, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **199**, 49-58.
- 1980 105. A. J. Ragauskas, G. T. Beckham, M. J. Bidy, R. Chandra, F. Chen, M. F. Davis, B. H. Davison,  
1981 R. A. Dixon, P. Gilna, M. Keller, P. Langan, A. K. Naskar, J. N. Saddler, T. J. Tschaplinski, G.  
1982 A. Tuskan and C. E. Wyman, *Science*, 2014, **344**.
- 1983 106. S. P. S. Chundawat, G. Bellesia, N. Uppugundla, L. da Costa Sousa, D. Gao, A. M. Cheh, U. P.  
1984 Agarwal, C. M. Bianchetti, G. N. Phillips, P. Langan, V. Balan, S. Gnanakaran and B. E. Dale, *J.  
1985 Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2011, **133**, 11163-11174.
- 1986 107. R. H. Atalla and D. L. Vanderhart, *Science*, 1984, **223**, 283-285.
- 1987 108. H. Wang, G. Gurau and R. D. Rogers, *Chem. Soc. Rev.*, 2012, **41**, 1519-1537.

- 1988 109. R. H. Atalla, J. W. Brady, J. F. Matthews, S.-Y. Ding and M. E. Himmel, in *Biomass*  
1989 *Recalcitrance*, Blackwell Publishing Ltd., 2009, pp. 188-212.
- 1990 110. B. H. Davison, J. Parks, M. F. Davis and B. S. Donohoe, in *Aqueous Pretreatment of Plant*  
1991 *Biomass for Biological and Chemical Conversion to Fuels and Chemicals*, John Wiley & Sons,  
1992 Ltd, 2013, pp. 23-38.
- 1993 111. S.-Y. Ding and M. E. Himmel, *J. Agric. Food. Chem.*, 2006, **54**, 597-606.
- 1994 112. M. Jarvis, *Nature*, 2003, **426**, 611-612.
- 1995 113. S. Y. Ding, Y. S. Liu, Y. Zeng, M. E. Himmel, J. O. Baker and E. A. Bayer, *Science*, 2012, **338**,  
1996 1055-1060.
- 1997 114. C. Li, L. Sun, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *BioEnergy Res.*, 2013, **6**, 14-23.
- 1998 115. M. Shafiei, K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**, 4914-4918.
- 1999 116. C. K. Nitsos, T. Choli-Papadopoulou, K. A. Matis and K. S. Triantafyllidis, *ACS Sustainable*  
2000 *Chem. Eng.*, 2016, **4**, 4529-4544.
- 2001 117. A. Kallioinen, M. Hakola, T. Riekkola, T. Repo, M. Leskelä, N. von Weymarn and M. Siika-aho,  
2002 *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **140**, 414-420.
- 2003 118. A. Goshadrou, K. Karimi and M. Lefsrud, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2013, **96**, 440-449.
- 2004 119. M. S. Noori and K. Karimi, *Biochem. Eng. J.*, 2016, **105, Part A**, 197-204.
- 2005 120. L. Kumar, V. Arantes, R. Chandra and J. Saddler, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **103**, 201-208.
- 2006 121. P. Salehian, K. Karimi, H. Zilouei and A. Jeihanipour, *Fuel*, 2013, **106**, 484-489.
- 2007 122. J. Xu, J. J. Cheng, R. R. Sharma-Shivappa and J. C. Burns, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**, 2900-  
2008 2903.
- 2009 123. H. Beheshti and K. Karimi, *Eng. Life Sci.*, 2016, **16**, 750-761.
- 2010 124. B. Erdei, M. Galbe and G. Zacchi, *Biomass Bioenergy*, 2013, **56**, 506-514.
- 2011 125. Z. Qiu, G. M. Aita and M. S. Walker, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **117**, 251-256.
- 2012 126. C. G. Yoo, H. Kim, F. Lu, A. Azarpira, X. Pan, K. K. Oh, J. S. Kim, J. Ralph and T. H. Kim,  
2013 *BioEnergy Res.*, 2016, **9**, 67-76.
- 2014 127. A. Goshadrou, K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Ind. Crops Prod.*, 2011, **34**, 1219-1225.

- 2015 128. A. Sluiter, B. Hames, R. Ruiz, C. Scarlata, J. Sluiter, D. Templeton and D. Crocker,  
2016 *Determination of structural carbohydrates and lignin in biomass*, National Renewable Energy  
2017 Laboratory, National Renewable Energy Laboratory, 2008.
- 2018 129. A. Faik, in *Green Biomass Pretreatment for Biofuels Production*, ed. T. Gu, Springer  
2019 Netherlands, 2013, pp. 1-30.
- 2020 130. C. Wyman, S. R. Decker, M. Himmel, J. W. Brady, C. E. Skopec and L. Viikari, in  
2021 *Polysaccharides*, CRC Press, 2004.
- 2022 131. M. Tenkanen, in *Hemicelluloses: Science and Technology*, American Chemical Society, 2003,  
2023 pp. 292-311.
- 2024 132. T. Zhang, R. Kumar, Y.-D. Tsai, R. T. Elander and C. E. Wyman, *Green Chem.*, 2015, **17**, 394-  
2025 403.
- 2026 133. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Carbohydr Res*, 2008, **343**, 290-300.
- 2027 134. R. D. Fagan, H. E. Grethlein, A. O. Converse and A. Porteous, *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 1971, **5**,  
2028 545-547.
- 2029 135. J. F. Saeman, *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, 1945, **37**, 43-52.
- 2030 136. M. Taherzadeh and K. Karimi, *Int. J. Mol. Sci.*, 2008, **9**, 1621-1651.
- 2031 137. V. Menon and M. Rao, *Prog. Energy Combust. Sci.*, 2012, **38**, 522-550.
- 2032 138. M. E. Himmel, S. Y. Ding, D. K. Johnson, W. S. Adney, M. R. Nimlos, J. W. Brady and T. D.  
2033 Foust, *Science (New York, N.Y.)*, 2007, **315**.
- 2034 139. U. Bornscheuer, K. Buchholz and J. Seibel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.*, 2014, **53**, 10876-10893.
- 2035 140. R. Ciriminna, N. Chavarría-Hernández, A. Inés Rodríguez Hernández and M. Pagliaro, *Biofuels*,  
2036 *Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2015, **9**, 368-377.
- 2037 141. D. Mohnen, *Curr. Opin. Plant Biol.*, 2008, **11**, 266-277.
- 2038 142. A. L. Galant, G. A. Luzio, W. W. Widmer and R. G. Cameron, *Food Hydrocolloids*, 2014, **35**,  
2039 661-669.
- 2040 143. M. B. Sticklen, *Nat. Rev. Genet.*, 2008, **9**, 433-443.
- 2041 144. C. Xiao and C. T. Anderson, *Front. Plant Sci.*, 2013, **4**, 67.
- 2042 145. B. Satari, J. Palhed, K. Karimi, M. Lundin, M. J. Taherzadeh and A. Zamani, *BioRes.* 2017, **12**,  
2043 1706-1722.

- 2044 146. L. R. Lynd, C. E. Wyman and T. U. Gerngross, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 1999, **15**, 777-793.
- 2045 147. M. J. Taherzadeh and A. Jeihanipour, in *Biogas Production*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2012, pp.  
2046 27-54.
- 2047 148. X. Zhao, L. Zhang and D. Liu, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2012, **6**, 465-482.
- 2048 149. B. Yang and C. E. Wyman, *Biofuel Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2008, **2**.
- 2049 150. P. Alvira, E. Tomás-Pejó, M. Ballesteros and M. J. Negro, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**, 4851-  
2050 4861.
- 2051 151. R. P. Chandra, R. Bura, W. E. Mabee, A. Berlin, X. Pan and J. N. Saddler, *Adv. Biochem. Eng.*  
2052 *Biotechnol.*, 2007, **108**.
- 2053 152. R. Kumar, G. Mago, V. Balan and C. E. Wyman, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2009, **100**, 3948-3962.
- 2054 153. N. Mosier, C. Wyman, B. Dale, R. Elander, Y. Y. Lee, M. Holtzapple and M. Ladisch, *Bioresour.*  
2055 *Technol.*, 2005, **96**, 673-686.
- 2056 154. L. da Costa Sousa, S. P. S. Chundawat, V. Balan and B. E. Dale, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2009,  
2057 **20**, 339-347.
- 2058 155. B. Yang and C. E. Wyman, *Biofuels Bioprod. Bioref.*, 2008, **2**.
- 2059 156. E. C. Bensah and M. Mensah, *Int. J. Chem. Eng.*, 2013, **2013**, 21.
- 2060 157. G. Brodeur, E. Yau, K. Badal, J. Collier, K. B. Ramachandran and S. Ramakrishnan, *Enzyme*  
2061 *Research*, 2011, **2011**, 17.
- 2062 158. P. Kumar, D. M. Barrett, M. J. Delwiche and P. Stroeve, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2009, **48**, 3713-  
2063 3729.
- 2064 159. Y-L. Loow, T. Y. Wu, J. Md. Jahim, A. W. Mohammad and W. H. Teoh, *Cellulose*, 2016, **23**,  
2065 1491-1520.
- 2066 160. B. Yang, L. Tao and C. E. Wyman, *Biofuels Bioprod. Bioref.*, 2017, **12**, 125-138.
- 2067 161. M. Kumar, A. O. Oyedun and A. Kumar, *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.*, 2018, **81**, 1742-1770.
- 2068 162. V. B. Agbor, N. Cicek, R. Sparling, A. Berlin and D. B. Levin, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2011, **29**, 675-  
2069 685.
- 2070 163. S. Wang, A. Lu and L. Zhang, *Prog. Polym. Sci.*, 2016, **53**, 169-206.
- 2071 164. Y. Cao, R. Zhang, T. Cheng, J. Guo, M. Xian and H. Liu, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2017,  
2072 **101**, 521-532.

- 2073 165. T. Li, Q. Fang, H. Chen, F. Qi, X. Ou, X. Zhao, et al., *RSC Adv.* 2017, **7**, 10609-17.
- 2074 166. B. Medronho and B. Lindman, *Curr. Opin. Colloid Interface Sci.*, 2014, **19**, 32-40.
- 2075 167. T. Kanda, K. Wakabayashi and K. Nisizawa, *J. Biochem.*, 1980, **87**, 1635-1639.
- 2076 168. R. Rinaldi and F. Schüth, *CHEMSUSCHEM*, 2009, **2**, 1096-1107.
- 2077 169. M. Wada, M. Ike and K. Tokuyasu, *Polym. Degrad. Stab.*, 2010, **95**, 543-548.
- 2078 170. E. Husson, T. Auxenfans, M. Herbaut, M. Baralle, V. Lambertyn, H. Rakotoarivonina, et al.,  
2079 *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2018, **251**, 280-287.
- 2080 171. G. Papa, T. Feldman, K. L. Sale, F. Adani, S. Singh and B. A. Simmons, *Bioresour. Technol.*,  
2081 2017, **241**, 627-637.
- 2082 172. N. Sathitsuksanoh, A. George and Y. H. P. Zhang, *J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol.*, 2013, **88**, 169-  
2083 180.
- 2084 173. T. Dutta, N. G. Isern, J. Sun, E. Wang, S. Hull, J. R. Cort, et al., *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*,  
2085 2017, **5**, 10116-27.
- 2086 174. Z. Sun, B. Fridrich, A. de Santi, S. Elangovan and K. Barta., *Chem. Rev.*, 2018, **118**, 614-678.
- 2087 175. A. Brandt, J. Grasvik, J. P. Hallett and T. Welton, *Green Chem.*, 2013, **15**, 550-583.
- 2088 176. S. Singh and B. A. Simmons, in *Aqueous Pretreatment of Plant Biomass for Biological and*  
2089 *Chemical Conversion to Fuels and Chemicals*, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2013, pp. 223-238.
- 2090 177. K. Karimi, M. Shafiei and R. Kumar, in *Biofuel Technologies: Recent Developments*, eds. K. V.  
2091 Gupta and G. M. Tuohy, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2013, pp. 53-96.
- 2092 178. P. Domínguez de María, *J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **89**, 11-18.
- 2093 179. H. Tadesse and R. Luque, *Energy Environ. Sci.*, 2011, **4**, 3913-3929.
- 2094 180. X. Zhao, L. Zhang and D. Liu, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2012, **6**, 561-579.
- 2095 181. J. Luo, M. Cai and T. Gu, in *Green Biomass Pretreatment for Biofuels Production*, ed. T. Gu,  
2096 Springer Netherlands, Dordrecht, 2013, pp. 127-153.
- 2097 182. T. Vancov, A.-S. Alston, T. Brown and S. McIntosh, *Renewable Energy*, 2012, **45**, 1-6.
- 2098 183. B. Satari and K. Karimi, *Resour. Conserv. Recycl.*, 2018, **129**, 153-167.
- 2099 184. J. Zhang, J. Wu, J. Yu, X. Zhang, J. He and J. Zhang, *Mater. Chem. Front.*, 2017, **1**, 1273-1290.

- 2100 185. Q. Hou, M. Ju, W. Li, L. Liu, Y. Chen and Q. Yang, *Molecules (Basel, Switzerland)*, 2017, **22**,  
2101 490.
- 2102 186. M. Ghasemi, M. Tsianou and P. Alexandridis, *Bioresour. Technol.* 2017, **228**, 330-338.
- 2103 187. R. Katzen and D. F. Othmer, *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, 1942, **34**, 314-322.
- 2104 188. N. Gilbert, I. A. Hobbs and J. D. Levine, *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, 1952, **44**, 1712-1720.
- 2105 189. M. J. Taherzadeh and K. Karimi, *BioRes.*, 2007, **2**, 472-499.
- 2106 190. M. J. Taherzadeh and K. Karimi, *BioRes.*, 2007, **2**, 707-738.
- 2107 191. B. Satari Baboukani, M. Vossoughi and I. Alemzadeh, *Biosys. Eng.*, 2012, **111**, 166-174.
- 2108 192. C. E. Wyman, *Trends Biotechnol.*, 2007, **25**, 153-157.
- 2109 193. D. Klein-Marcuschamer, P. Oleskowicz-Popiel, B. A. Simmons and H. W. Blanch, *Biotechnol.*  
2110 *Bioeng.*, 2012, **109**, 1083-1087.
- 2111 194. H. Jørgensen, J. B. Kristensen and C. Felby, *Biofuels, Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2007, **1**, 119-134.
- 2112 195. Z. Zhang, A. A. Donaldson and X. Ma, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2012, **30**, 913-919.
- 2113 196. E. Ximenes, Y. Kim and M. R. Ladisch, in *Aqueous Pretreatment of Plant Biomass for Biological*  
2114 *and Chemical Conversion to Fuels and Chemicals*, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2013, pp. 39-60.
- 2115 197. M. Kostylev and D. Wilson, *Biofuels*, 2012, **3**, 61-70.
- 2116 198. R. C. Kuhad, D. Deswal, S. Sharma, A. Bhattacharya, K. K. Jain, A. Kaur, B. I. Pletschke, A.  
2117 Singh and M. Karp, *Renewable Sustainable Energy Rev.*, 2016, **55**, 249-272.
- 2118 199. P. Zhang and L. R. Lynd, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2004, **88**.
- 2119 200. Y. H. P. Zhang and L. R. Lynd, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2006, **94**, 888-898.
- 2120 201. T. Jeoh, M. J. Cardona, N. Karuna, A. R. Mudinoor and J. Nill, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2017, **114**,  
2121 1369-1385.
- 2122 202. P. Bansal, M. Hall, M. J. Realff, J. H. Lee and A. S. Bommarius, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2009, **27**, 833-  
2123 848.
- 2124 203. D. B. Wilson, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2009, **20**, 295-299.
- 2125 204. C. M. Payne, B. C. Knott, H. B. Mayes, H. Hansson, M. E. Himmel, M. Sandgren, J. Ståhlberg  
2126 and G. T. Beckham, *Chem. Rev.*, 2015, **115**, 1308-1448.



- 2127 205. R. Biswas, A. Persad and V. S. Bisaria, in *Bioprocessing of Renewable Resources to Commodity*  
2128 *Bioproducts*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2014, pp. 105-132.
- 2129 206. H. J. Gilbert, J. P. Knox and A. B. Boraston, *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.*, 2013, **23**, 669-677.
- 2130 207. M. Saloheimo, M. Paloheimo, S. Hakola, J. Pere, B. Swanson, E. Nyssönen, A. Bhatia, M. Ward  
2131 and M. Penttilä, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 2002, **269**, 4202-4211.
- 2132 208. S. Jung, Y. Song, H. M. Kim and H. J. Bae, *Enzyme Microb. Technol.*, 2015, **77**, 38-45.
- 2133 209. G. Vaaje-Kolstad, B. Westereng, S. J. Horn, Z. Liu, H. Zhai, M. Sorlie and V. G. Eijsink,  
2134 *Science*, 2010, **330**, 219-222.
- 2135 210. I. J. Kim, H. J. Lee, I.-G. Choi and K. H. Kim, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **98**, 8469-  
2136 8480.
- 2137 211. S. R. Decker, M. Siika-Aho and L. Viikari, in *Biomass Recalcitrance*, Blackwell Publishing Ltd.,  
2138 2009, pp. 352-373.
- 2139 212. D. B. Wilson, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2012, **93**, 497-502.
- 2140 213. T. Lloyd and C. Liu, in *Aqueous Pretreatment of Plant Biomass for Biological and Chemical*  
2141 *Conversion to Fuels and Chemicals*, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2013, pp. 451-469.
- 2142 214. D. Shallom and Y. Shoham, *Curr. Opin. Microbiol.*, 2003, **6**, 219-228.
- 2143 215. A. Varnai, L. Huikko, J. Pere, M. Siika-Aho and L. Viikari, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**,  
2144 9096-9104.
- 2145 216. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 2009, **25**, 302-314.
- 2146 217. S. P. S. Chundawat, G. T. Beckham, M. E. Himmel and B. E. Dale, *Annu. Rev. Chem. Biomol.*  
2147 *Eng.*, 2011, **2**, 121-145.
- 2148 218. M. M. Kabir, G. Forgács and I. Sárvári Horváth, in *Lignocellulose-Based Bioproducts*, ed. K.  
2149 Karimi, Springer International Publishing, Cham, 2015, pp. 207-251.
- 2150 219. L. R. Lynd, P. J. Weimer, W. H. van Zyl and I. S. Pretorius, *Microbiol. Mol. Biol. Rev.*, 2002, **66**.
- 2151 220. E. A. Bayer, J. P. Belaich, Y. Shoham and R. Lamed, *Annu. Rev. Microbiol.*, 2004, **58**, 521-554.
- 2152 221. G. Salehi Jouzani and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Biofuel Res. J.*, 2015, **2**, 152-195.
- 2153 222. D. Cannella and H. Jørgensen, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2014, **111**, 59-68.
- 2154 223. W. F. Gauss, S. Suzuki and M. Takagi, Google Patents, 1976.

- 2155 224. T. B. Vinzant, W. S. Adney, S. R. Decker, J. O. Baker, M. T. Kinter, N. E. Sherman, J. W. Fox  
2156 and M. E. Himmel, in *Twenty-Second Symposium on Biotechnology for Fuels and Chemicals*,  
2157 eds. B. H. Davison, J. McMillan and M. Finkelstein, Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, 2001, pp. 99-  
2158 107.
- 2159 225. D. B. Wilson, in *Biomass Recalcitrance*, Blackwell Publishing Ltd., 2009, pp. 374-392.
- 2160 226. T. K. Ghose, *Pure Appl. Chem.*, 1987, **59**, 257-268.
- 2161 227. b. Adney and J. Baker, *Technical Report. Natural Renewable Energy Laboratory. NREL/TP-510-  
2162 42628*, 2008.
- 2163 228. M. M. Bradford, *Anal. Biochem.*, 1976, **72**, 248-254.
- 2164 229. P. K. Smith, R. I. Krohn, G. T. Hermanson, A. K. Mallia, F. H. Gartner, M. D. Provenzano, E. K.  
2165 Fujimoto, N. M. Goeke, B. J. Olson and D. C. Klenk, *Anal. Biochem.*, 1985, **150**, 76-85.
- 2166 230. S. P. Chundawat, M. S. Lipton, S. O. Purvine, N. Uppugundla, D. Gao, V. Balan and B. E. Dale,  
2167 *J. Proteome Res.*, 2011, **10**, 4365-4372.
- 2168 231. M. Selig and N. Y. J. Weiss, in *Technique report, NREL/TP-510-42629*, 2008.
- 2169 232. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Woodhead Publishing Series in Energy*, 2010, **3**, 73-121.
- 2170 233. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, in *Aqueous Pretreatment of Plant Biomass for Biological and  
2171 Chemical Conversion to Fuels and Chemicals*, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2013, pp. 281-310.
- 2172 234. S. B. A. Hamid, M. M. Islam and R. Das, *Cellulose*, 2015, **22**, 2157-2182.
- 2173 235. A. P. Sinitsyn, A. V. Gusakov and E. Y. Vlasenko, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 1991, **30**, 43-59.
- 2174 236. J. Wallace, M. Brienzo, M. P. García-Aparicio and J. F. Görgens, *New Biotechnol.*, 2016, **33**,  
2175 361-371.
- 2176 237. L. Zhu, J. P. O'Dwyer, V. S. Chang, C. B. Granda and M. T. Holtzapple, *Bioresour. Technol.*,  
2177 2008, **99**, 3817-3828.
- 2178 238. Z. Ling, S. Chen, X. Zhang, K. Takabe and F. Xu, *Scientific Reports*, 2017, **7**, 10230.
- 2179 239. V. Pihlajaniemi, M. H. Sipponen, H. Liimatainen, J. A. Sirvio, A. Nyysola and S. Laakso, *Green  
2180 Chem.*, 2016, **18**, 1295-1305.
- 2181 240. J. A. Rollin, Z. Zhu, N. Sathitsuksanoh and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 22-  
2182 30.
- 2183 241. B. Yang, Z. Dai, S.-Y. Ding and C. E. Wyman, *Biofuels*, 2011, **2**.

- 2184 242. K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **200**, 1008-1018.
- 2185 243. S. Park, J. Baker, M. Himmel, P. Parilla and D. Johnson, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2010, **3**, 10.
- 2186 244. A. Peciulyte, K. Karlström, P. T. Larsson and L. Olsson, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2015, **8**, 1-13.
- 2187 245. B. Yang, D. M. Willies and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2006, **94**, 1122-1128.
- 2188 246. M. Hall, P. Bansal, J. H. Lee, M. J. Realff and A. S. Bommarius, *FEBS J.*, 2010, **277**, 1571-1582.
- 2189 247. A. Mittal, R. Katahira, M. E. Himmel and D. K. Johnson, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2011, **4**, 1-16.
- 2190 248. T. Cui, J. Li, Z. Yan, M. Yu and S. Li, *Biotechnol Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 134.
- 2191 249. M. Ioelovich and E. Morag, *BioRes.*, 2011, **6**, 2818-2835.
- 2192 250. L. Segal, J. J. Creely, A. E. Martin and C. M. Conrad, *Text. Res. J.*, 1959, **29**, 786-794.
- 2193 251. A. D. French and M. Santiago Cintrón, *Cellulose*, 2013, **20**, 583-588.
- 2194 252. P. J. Harris and B. A. Stone, in *Biomass Recalcitrance*, Blackwell Publishing Ltd., 2009, pp. 61-  
2195 93.
- 2196 253. K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **203**, 348-356.
- 2197 254. Y. H. P. Zhang and L. R. Lynd, *Biomacromolecules*, 2005, **6**, 1510-1515.
- 2198 255. V. P. Puri, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 1984, **26**, 1219-1222.
- 2199 256. V. Arantes and J. N. Saddler, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2010, **3**, 1-11.
- 2200 257. V. Arantes and J. N. Saddler, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2011, **4**, 1-17.
- 2201 258. X. Meng and A. J. Ragauskas, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **27**, 150-158.
- 2202 259. M. Wiman, D. Dienes, M. A. T. Hansen, T. van der Meulen, G. Zacchi and G. Lidén, *Bioresour.*  
2203 *Technol.*, 2012, **126**, 208-215.
- 2204 260. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2009, **103**, 252-267.
- 2205 261. J. Hu, K. Gourlay, V. Arantes, J. S. Van Dyk, A. Pribowo and J. N. Saddler, *ChemSusChem*,  
2206 2015, **8**, 901-907.
- 2207 262. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Enzyme Microb. Technol.*, 2008, **42**, 426-433.
- 2208 263. S. A. Maurer, C. N. Bedbrook and C. J. Radke, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2012, **51**, 11389-11400.
- 2209 264. C. Tai and D. R. Keshwani, *Energy Fuels*, 2014, **28**, 1956-1961.

- 2210 265. D. Gao, S. P. S. Chundawat, N. Uppugundla, V. Balan and B. E. Dale, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, 2211 **108**, 1788-1800.
- 2212 266. Z. Zhu, N. Sathitsuksanoh and Y. H. Percival Zhang, *Analyst*, 2009, **134**, 2267-2272.
- 2213 267. Y. K. Mok, V. Arantes and J. N. Saddler, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 2015, **176**, 1564-1580.
- 2214 268. A. Várnai, L. Viikari, K. Marjamaa and M. Siika-aho, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 2215 1220-1227.
- 2216 269. D. L. Machado, J. Moreira Neto, J. G. da Cruz Pradella, A. Bonomi, S. C. Rabelo and A. C. da 2217 Costa, *Biotechnol. Appl. Biochem.*, 2015, **62**, 681-689.
- 2218 270. J. Zhang, M. Tang and L. Viikari, *Bioresour Technol*, 2012, **121**, 8-12.
- 2219 271. T. Jeoh, D. K. Johnson, W. S. Adney and M. E. Himmel, in *ACS Division of Fuel Chemistry, 2220 Preprints*, 2005, pp. 673-674.
- 2221 272. A. Várnai, M. Siika-aho and L. Viikari, *Enzyme Microb. Technol.*, 2010, **46**, 185-193.
- 2222 273. M. J. Selig, T. B. Vinzant, M. E. Himmel and S. R. Decker, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 2009, 2223 **155**, 94-103.
- 2224 274. R. Kumar, F. Hu, P. Sannigrahi, S. Jung, A. J. Ragauskas and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2225 2013, **110**, 737-753.
- 2226 275. X. Wang, K. Li, M. Yang and J. Zhang, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2016, **148**, 362-370.
- 2227 276. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2009, **100**, 4203-4213.
- 2228 277. J. Zhang and L. Viikari, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **174**, 1393-1402.
- 2229 278. K. Öhgren, R. Bura, J. Saddler and G. Zacchi, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2007, **98**, 2503-2510.
- 2230 279. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2014, **111**, 1341-1353.
- 2231 280. Q. Qing, B. Yang and C. E. Wyman, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**.
- 2232 281. J. Shi, M. A. Ebrik, B. Yang, R. J. Garlock, V. Balan, B. E. Dale, V. Ramesh Pallapolu, Y. Y. 2233 Lee, Y. Kim, N. S. Mosier, M. R. Ladisch, M. T. Holtzapple, M. Falls, R. Sierra-Ramirez, B. S. 2234 Donohoe, T. B. Vinzant, R. T. Elander, B. Hames, S. Thomas, R. E. Warner and C. E. Wyman, 2235 *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 11080-11088.
- 2236 282. S. Xue, N. Uppugundla, M. J. Bowman, D. Cavalier, L. Da Costa Sousa, B. E Dale and V. Balan, 2237 *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2015, **8**, 195.
- 2238 283. D. Xin, M. Yang, X. Chen and J. Zhang, *RSC Adv.*, 2016, **6**, 73859-73868.

- 2239 284. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2009, **102**, 457-467.
- 2240 285. H. Yang, J. Chen, Q. Chen, K. Wang and R.-C. Sun, *Bioenerg. Res.*, 2015, **8**, 1847-1855.
- 2241 286. Q. Sun, M. Foston, X. Meng, D. Sawada, S. V. Pingali, H. M. O'Neill, H. Li, C. E. Wyman, P.  
2242 Langan, A. J. Ragauskas and R. Kumar, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 150.
- 2243 287. S. Nakagame, R. P. Chandra, J. F. Kadla and J. N. Saddler, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 4507-  
2244 4517.
- 2245 288. Y. X. An, M. H. Zong, S. Q. Hu and N. Li, *Chem. Eng. Sci.*, 2017, **161**, 48-56.
- 2246 289. Y. Zeng, S. Zhao, S. Yang and S.-Y. Ding, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **27**, 38-45.
- 2247 290. S. Nakagame, R. P. Chandra, J. F. Kadla and J. N. Saddler, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 538-  
2248 548.
- 2249 291. W. Wang, Y. Zhu, J. Du, Y. Yang and Y. Jin, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2015, **181**, 7-12.
- 2250 292. C. Lai, M. Tu, Z. Shi, K. Zheng, L. G. Olmos and S. Yu, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **163**, 320-  
2251 327.
- 2252 293. Z. Yu, K.-S. Gwak, T. Treasure, H. Jameel, H.-m. Chang and S. Park, *ChemSusChem*, 2014, **7**,  
2253 1942-1950.
- 2254 294. Z. Yan, J. Li, S. Chang, T. Cui, Y. Jiang, M. Yu, L. Zhang, G. Zhao, P. Qi and S. Li, *Fuel*, 2015,  
2255 **158**, 152-158.
- 2256 295. K. C. Nlewem and M. E. Thrash Jr, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**, 5426-5430.
- 2257 296. F. Ghorbani, M. Karimi, D. Biria, H. R. Kariminia and A. Jeyhanipour, *Biochem. Eng. J.*, 2015,  
2258 **101**, 77-84.
- 2259 297. R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 2009, **25**.
- 2260 298. B. Yang and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2006, **94**, 611-617.
- 2261 299. B. Yang and C. Wyman, Google Patents, 2004.
- 2262 300. J. Rahikainen, S. Mikander, K. Marjamaa, T. Tamminen, A. Lappas, L. Viikari and K. Kruus,  
2263 *Biotechnol Bioeng*, 2011, **108**, 2823-2834.
- 2264 301. F. Guo, W. Shi, W. Sun, X. Li, F. Wang, J. Zhao and Y. Qu, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 1-10.
- 2265 302. J. K. Ko, E. Ximenes, Y. Kim and M. R. Ladisch, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2015, **112**, 447-456.
- 2266 303. J. L. Rahikainen, R. Martin-Sampedro, H. Heikkinen, S. Rovio, K. Marjamaa, T. Tamminen, O.  
2267 J. Rojas and K. Kruus, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **133**, 270-278.

- 2268 304. L. Qin, W.-C. Li, L. Liu, J.-Q. Zhu, X. Li, B.-Z. Li and Y.-J. Yuan, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2016, **9**,  
2269 1-10.
- 2270 305. E. Ximenes, Y. Kim, N. Mosier, B. Dien and M. Ladisch, *Enzyme Microb. Technol.*, 2010, **46**,  
2271 170-176.
- 2272 306. E. Walch, A. Zemann, F. Schinner, G. Bonn and O. Bobleter, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 1992, **39**, 173-  
2273 177.
- 2274 307. L. J. Jönsson, B. Ariksson and N.-O. Nilvebrant, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2013, **6**, 1-10.
- 2275 308. Y. Li, B. Qi and Y. Wan, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **167**, 324-330.
- 2276 309. A. Oliva-Taravilla, E. Tomás-Pejó, M. Demuez, C. González-Fernández and M. Ballesteros, *J.*  
2277 *Biotechnol.*, 2016, **218**, 94-101.
- 2278 310. J. K. Ko, Y. Um, Y. C. Park, J. H. Seo and K. H. Kim, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2015, **99**,  
2279 4201-4212.
- 2280 311. L. J. Jönsson and C. Martín, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **199**, 103-112.
- 2281 312. C. M. Cai, T. Zhang, R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **89**, 2-10.
- 2282 313. C. M. Cai, N. Nagane, R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *Green Chem.*, 2014, **16**, 3819-3829.
- 2283 314. T. Zhang, R. Kumar and C. E. Wyman, *RSC Adv.*, 2013, **3**, 9809-9819.
- 2284 315. J. Shen and C. E. Wyman, *AIChE J.*, 2012, **58**, 236-246.
- 2285 316. J. Q. Bond, A. A. Upadhye, H. Olcay, G. A. Tompsett, J. Jae, R. Xing, D. M. Alonso, D. Wang,  
2286 T. Zhang, R. Kumar, A. Foster, S. M. Sen, C. T. Maravelias, R. Malina, S. R. H. Barrett, R. Lobo,  
2287 C. E. Wyman, J. A. Dumesic and G. W. Huber, *Energy Environ. Sci.*, 2014, **7**, 1500-1523.
- 2288 317. V. Reginatto and R. V. Antônio, *Braz. J. Microbiol.*, 2015, **46**, 323-335.
- 2289 318. X. Jing, X. Zhang and J. Bao, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 2009, **159**, 696-707.
- 2290 319. A. Arora, E. M. Martin, M. H. Pelkki and D. J. Carrier, *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2013, **1**,  
2291 23-28.
- 2292 320. Z. Xiao, X. Zhang, D. J. Gregg and J. N. Saddler, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 2004, **113-116**,  
2293 1115-1126.
- 2294 321. Q. Qing and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2011, **4**, 1-12.
- 2295 322. X. Wang, K. Li, M. Yang, J. Wang and J. Zhang, *Cellulose*, 2017, **24**, 35-47.
- 2296 323. R. Zhai, J. Hu and J. N. Saddler, *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2016.

- 2297 324. L. Zhang, X. Li, Q. Yong, S.-T. Yang, J. Ouyang and S. Yu, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **203**, 173-  
2298 180.
- 2299 325. Y. Lu, R. Warner, M. Sedlak, N. Ho and N. S. Mosier, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 2009, **25**, 349-356.
- 2300 326. C. S. Walseth, *Tappi*, 1952, **35**, 228–233.
- 2301 327. K. R. Sharrock, *J. Biochem. Biophys. Methods*, 1988, **17**, 81-105.
- 2302 328. T. M. Wood, in *Methods Enzymol.*, ed. S. T. K. Willis A. Wood, Academic Press, 1988, pp. 19-  
2303 25.
- 2304 329. T. M. Wood and K. M. Bhat, in *Methods Enzymol.*, ed. S. T. K. Willis A. Wood, Academic Press,  
2305 1988, pp. 87-112.
- 2306 330. W. D. Bellamy and F. F. Holub, Google Patents, 1977.
- 2307 331. Y. H. P. Zhang, J. Cui, L. R. Lynd and L. R. Kuang, *Biomacromolecules*, 2006, **7**, 644-648.
- 2308 332. D. Klemm, B. Philipp, T. Heinze, U. Heinze and W. Wagenknecht, in *Comprehensive Cellulose  
2309 Chemistry*, Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA, 2004, pp. 9-29.
- 2310 333. J. Zhang, J. Zhang, L. Lin, T. Chen, J. Zhang, S. Liu, Z. Li and P. Ouyang, *Molecules (Basel,  
2311 Switzerland)*, 2009, **14**, 5027-5041.
- 2312 334. Y.-H. P. Zhang, S.-Y. Ding, J. R. Mielenz, J.-B. Cui, R. T. Elander, M. Laser, M. E. Himmel, J.  
2313 R. McMillan and L. R. Lynd, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2007, **97**, 214-223.
- 2314 335. P. Conte, A. Maccotta, C. De Pasquale, S. Bubici and G. Alonzo, *J. Agric. Food. Chem.*, 2009,  
2315 **57**, 8748-8752.
- 2316 336. J. Zhang, B. Zhang, J. Zhang, L. Lin, S. Liu and P. Ouyang, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2010, **28**, 613-619.
- 2317 337. X. Jia, Y. Chen, C. Shi, Y. Ye, P. Wang, X. Zeng, et al., *J. Agric. Food Chem.*, 2013, **61**, 12405-  
2318 14.
- 2319 338. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu, T.-J. Ho, M.-D. Bai and Y.-H. P. Zhang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010,  
2320 **101**, 4926-4929.
- 2321 339. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu, N. Templeton, J. A. Rollin, S. P. Harvey and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Ind.  
2322 Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2009, **48**, 6441-6447.
- 2323 340. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **117**, 228-233.
- 2324 341. Z. Zhu, N. Sathitsuksanoh, T. Vinzant, D. J. Schell, J. D. McMillan and Y. H. P. Zhang,  
2325 *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2009, **103**, 715-724.

- 2326 342. B. Satari, K. Karimi and A. Zamani, *J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol.*, 2016, **91**, 1835-1843.
- 2327 343. K. Karimi and A. Zamani, *Biotechnol. Adv.*, 2013, **31**, 466-481.
- 2328 344. D. C. Nieves, K. Karimi and I. S. Horváth, *Ind. Crops Prod.*, 2011, **34**, 1097-1101.
- 2329 345. S. Mirmohamadsadeghi, K. Karimi and I. Sárvári Horváth, *BioRes.*, 2016, **11**, 2.
- 2330 346. N. K. Mund, D. Dash, C. R. Barik, V. V. Goud, L. Sahoo, P. Mishra and N. R. Nayak, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2017, **236**, 97-105.
- 2332 347. P. Siripong, P. Duangporn, E. Takata and Y. Tsutsumi, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **203**, 303-308.
- 2333 348. V. Jafari, S. R. Labafzadeh, A. Jeihanipour, K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Renewable Energy*, 2011, **36**, 2771-2775.
- 2334
- 2335 349. K. Wang, H. Y. Yang, F. Xu and R. C. Sun, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 4524-4529.
- 2336 350. G. Moxley, Z. Zhu and Y. H. P. Zhang, *J. Agric. Food. Chem.*, 2008, **56**, 7885-7890.
- 2337 351. H. Li, N.-J. Kim, M. Jiang, J. W. Kang and H. N. Chang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2009, **100**, 3245-3251.
- 2338
- 2339 352. X. Ge, D. M. Burner, J. Xu, G. C. Phillips and G. Sivakumar, *Biotechnol. J.*, 2011, **6**, 66-73.
- 2340 353. X. Ge, V. S. Green, N. Zhang, G. Sivakumar and J. Xu, *Process Biochem.*, 2012, **47**, 335-339.
- 2341 354. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Cellulose*, 2012, **19**, 1161-1172.
- 2342 355. M. M. Ishola, Isroi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **165**, 9-12.
- 2343 356. A. Goshadrou, K. Karimi and M. Lefsrud, *CSBE/SCGAB 2013 Annual Conference, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, 7-10 July, 2013*.
- 2344
- 2345 357. K. Gourlay, V. Arantes and J. Saddler, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2012, **5**, 51.
- 2346 358. Y. H. P. Zhang, Z. Zhiguang, R. Joe and S. Noppadon, in *Cellulose Solvents: For Analysis, Shaping and Chemical Modification*, American Chemical Society, 2010, pp. 365-379.
- 2347
- 2348 359. A. R. Esteghalian, V. Srivastava, N. Gilkes, D. J. Gregg and J. N. Saddler, in *Glycosyl Hydrolases for Biomass Conversion*, eds. M. E. Himmel, J. O. Baker and J. N. Saddler, American Chemical Society, Washington DC, 2000.
- 2349
- 2350
- 2351 360. T. Jeoh, C. I. Ishizawa, M. F. Davis, M. E. Himmel, W. S. Adney and D. K. Johnson, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2007, **98**.
- 2352
- 2353 361. Y. H. P. Zhang and L. R. Lynd, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2006, **94**, 888-898.



- 2354 362. Y. Liu, Q. Zhong, S. Wang and Z. Cai, *Biomacromolecules*, 2011, **12**, 2626-2632.
- 2355 363. J. Hong, X. Ye and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Langmuir*, 2007, **23**, 12535-12540.
- 2356 364. J. A. Rollin, Z. Zhu, N. Sathitsuksanoh and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 22-30.
- 2357
- 2358 365. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu, S. Wi and Y. H. Percival Zhang, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 521-529.
- 2359
- 2360 366. B. John, K. Francis J and G. Kennecorwin H, in *Cellul. Chem. Technol.*, AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, 1977, pp. 42-55.
- 2361
- 2362 367. G. T. Beckham, Y. J. Bomble, E. A. Bayer, M. E. Himmel and M. F. Crowley, *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 2011, **22**, 231-238.
- 2363
- 2364 368. G. T. Beckham, J. F. Matthews, B. Peters, Y. J. Bomble, M. E. Himmel and M. F. Crowley, *J. Phys. Chem. B*, 2011, **115**, 4118-4127.
- 2365
- 2366 369. S. Kim, S. C. Chmely, M. R. Nimlos, Y. J. Bomble, T. D. Foust, R. S. Paton and G. T. Beckham, *J. Phys. Chem. Lett.*, 2011, **2**, 2846-2852.
- 2367
- 2368 370. R. Parthasarathi, R. A. Romero, A. Redondo and S. Gnanakaran, *J. Phys. Chem. Lett.*, 2011, **2**, 2660-2666.
- 2369
- 2370 371. M. Bergensträhle, J. Wohler, M. E. Himmel and J. W. Brady, *Carbohydr. Res.*, 2010, **345**, 2060-2066.
- 2371
- 2372 372. L. Charlier and K. Mazeau, *J. Phys. Chem. B*, 2012, **116**, 4163-4174.
- 2373 373. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu and Y. H. P. Zhang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **117**, 228-233.
- 2374 374. T. Rosenau, A. Potthast, H. Sixta and P. Kosma, *Prog. Polym. Sci.*, 2001, **26**, 1763-1837.
- 2375 375. K. Wang, F. Xu and R.-C. Sun, in *Biological Conversion of Biomass for Fuels and Chemicals: Explorations from Natural Utilization Systems*, The Royal Society of Chemistry, 2014, pp. 318-343.
- 2376
- 2377
- 2378 376. C. Graenacher and R. Sallmann, Google Patents, 1939.
- 2379 377. D. L. Johnson, Google Patents, 1969.
- 2380 378. C. C. McCorsley and J. K. Varga, Google Patents, 1979.
- 2381 379. H. P. Fink, P. Weigel, H. J. Purz and J. Ganster, *Prog. Polym. Sci.*, 2001, **26**, 1473-1524.
- 2382 380. D. L. Johnson, Google Patents, 1970.

- 2383 381. C. Woodings, in *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc.,  
2384 2000.
- 2385 382. R. Asachi and K. Karimi, *Process Biochem.*, 2013, **48**, 1524-1531.
- 2386 383. A. Goshadrou, K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Biomass Bioenergy*, 2013, **49**, 95-101.
- 2387 384. A. Jeihanipour, K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2010, **105**, 469-476.
- 2388 385. C.-H. Kuo and C.-K. Lee, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2009, **100**, 866-871.
- 2389 386. P. R. Lennartsson, C. Niklasson and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 4425-  
2390 4432.
- 2391 387. N. Poornejad, K. Karimi and T. Behzad, *Ind. Crops Prod.*, 2013, **41**, 408-413.
- 2392 388. S. Aslanzadeh, A. Berg, M. Taherzadeh and I. Sárvári Horváth, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*,  
2393 2014, **172**, 2998-3008.
- 2394 389. S. Aslanzadeh, M. J. Taherzadeh and I. S. Horváth, *BioRes.*, 2011, **6**, 5193-5205.
- 2395 390. A. Jeihanipour, S. Aslanzadeh, K. Rajendran, G. Balasubramanian and M. J. Taherzadeh,  
2396 *Renewable Energy*, 2013, **52**, 128-135.
- 2397 391. A. Jeihanipour, K. Karimi, C. Niklasson and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Waste Manage.*, 2010, **30**, 2504-  
2398 2509.
- 2399 392. A. Jeihanipour, C. Niklasson and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Process Biochem.*, 2011, **46**, 1509-1514.
- 2400 393. M. M. Kabir, M. d. P. Castillo, M. J. Taherzadeh and I. S. Horváth, *BioRes.*, 2013, **8**, 5409-5423.
- 2401 394. M. M. Kabir, C. Niklasson, M. J. Taherzadeh and I. S. Horváth, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **161**,  
2402 446-450.
- 2403 395. R. Millati, F. A. Purwandari, A. P. Sanjaya, M. N. Cahyanto, I. S. Horváth, C. Niklasson and M.  
2404 J. Taherzadeh, *World Academy of Science, Engineering and Technology* 2012, **6**, 1010-1014.
- 2405 396. F. A. Purwandari, A. P. Sanjaya, R. Millati, M. N. Cahyanto, I. S. Horváth, C. Niklasson and M.  
2406 J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **128**, 461-466.
- 2407 397. A. Teghammar, K. Karimi, I. Sárvári Horváth and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Biomass Bioenergy*, 2012,  
2408 **36**, 116-120.
- 2409 398. F. Wendler, A. Konkin and T. Heinze, *Macromol. Symp.*, 2008, **262**, 72-84.
- 2410 399. O. Biganska and P. Navard, *Polymer*, 2003, **44**, 1035-1039.
- 2411 400. C. Cuissinat and P. Navard, *Macromol. Symp.*, 2006, **244**, 1-18.

- 2412 401. H. Zhao, J. H. Kwak, Y. Wang, J. A. Franz, J. M. White and J. E. Holladay, *Carbohydr. Polym.*,  
2413 2007, **67**, 97-103.
- 2414 402. L. Zhang, H. Lu, J. Yu, Z. Wang, Y. Fan and X. J. Zhou, *Agric. Food. Chem.* 2017, **65**, 9587-94.
- 2415 403. G. Brodeur, *Electronic Theses, Treatises and Dissertations. Paper 7312*, 2013.
- 2416 404. N. Le Moigne and P. Navard, in *Cellulose Solvents: For Analysis, Shaping and Chemical*  
2417 *Modification*, American Chemical Society, 2010, pp. 137-148.
- 2418 405. M. L. Nelson and R. T. O'Connor, *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.*, 1964, **8**, 1325-1341.
- 2419 406. S. Y. Oh, D. I. Yoo, Y. Shin, H. C. Kim, H. Y. Kim, Y. S. Chung, W. H. Park and J. H. Youk,  
2420 *Carbohydr. Res.*, 2005, **340**, 2376-2391.
- 2421 407. M. L. Nelson and R. T. O'Connor, *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.*, 1964, **8**, 1311-1324.
- 2422 408. M. Khodaverdi, A. Jeihanipour, K. Karimi and M. Taherzadeh, *J. Ind. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*,  
2423 2012, **39**, 429-438.
- 2424 409. S. Sasmal, V. V. Goud and K. Mohanty, *Biomass Bioenergy*, 2012, **45**, 212-220.
- 2425 410. T. Virtanen and S. Maunu, *Cellulose*, 2014, **21**, 153-165.
- 2426 411. B. Satari, K. Karimi and M. Molaverdi, *Bioprocess Biosyst. Eng.*, 2018, **41**, 249-264.
- 2427 412. R. Chandra, S. Ewanick, P. Chung, K. Au-Yeung, L. Rio, W. Mabee and J. Saddler, *Biotechnol.*  
2428 *Lett.*, 2009, **31**, 1217-1222.
- 2429 413. R. Chandra, S. Ewanick, C. Hsieh and J. N. Saddler, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 2008, **24**, 1178-1185.
- 2430 414. F. Simons, *Tappi J.*, 1950, **33**, 312-314.
- 2431 415. X. Meng, M. Foston, J. Leisen, J. DeMartini, C. E. Wyman and A. J. Ragauskas, *Bioresour.*  
2432 *Technol.*, 2013, **144**, 467-476.
- 2433 416. A. Teghammar, R. P. Chandra, J. N. Saddler, M. J. Taherzadeh and I. S. Horváth, *BioRes.*, 2012,  
2434 **7**, 3921-3934.
- 2435 417. Y. Ogiwara and K. Arai, *Textile Res. J.*, 1968, **38**, 885-891.
- 2436 418. A. Kongdee, T. Bechtold, E. Burtscher and M. Scheinecker, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2004, **57**, 39-44.
- 2437 419. O. Biganska and P. Navard, *Biomacromolecules*, 2005, **6**, 1948-1953.
- 2438 420. K. E. Perepelkin, *Fibre Chem.*, 2007, **39**, 163-172.
- 2439 421. M. Shafiei, K. Karimi and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 7879-7886.

- 2440 422. A. Teghammar, G. Forgács, I. Sárvári Horváth and M. J. Taherzadeh, *Appl. Energy*, 2014, **116**,  
2441 125-133.
- 2442 423. A. Konkin, F. Wendler, F. Meister, H. K. Roth, A. Aganov and O. Ambacher, *Spectrochimica*  
2443 *Acta Part A: Molecular and Biomolecular Spectroscopy*, 2008, **69**, 1053-1055.
- 2444 424. T. Rosenau, A. Potthast, I. Adorjan, A. Hofinger, H. Sixta, H. Firgo and P. Kosma, *Cellulose*,  
2445 2002, **9**, 283-291.
- 2446 425. Y.-C. He, D.-Q. Xia, C.-L. Ma, L. Gong, T. Gong, M.-X. Wu, Y. Zhang, Y.-J. Tang, J.-H. Xu and  
2447 Y.-Y. Liu, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **135**, 18-22.
- 2448 426. G. Meister and M. Wechsler, *Biodegradation*, 1998, **9**, 91-102.
- 2449 427. H. Stockinger, O. M. Kut and E. Heinzle, *Water Res.*, 1996, **30**, 1745-1748.
- 2450 428. M. A. P. Martins, C. P. Frizzo, A. Z. Tier, D. N. Moreira, N. Zanatta and H. G. Bonacorso, *Chem.*  
2451 *Rev.*, 2014, **114**, PR1-PR70.
- 2452 429. P. Walden, *Bulletin de l'Academie Impere'riale des Sciences de St.-Pe'tersbourg* 1914, **8**, 405–  
2453 422.
- 2454 430. F. H. Hurley and T. P. Wier, *J. Electrochem. Soc.*, 1951, **98**, 207-212.
- 2455 431. J. S. Wilkes, J. A. Levisky, R. A. Wilson and C. L. Hussey, *Inorg. Chem.*, 1982, **21**, 1263-1264.
- 2456 432. J. S. Wilkes and M. J. Zaworotko, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.*, 1992, 965-967.
- 2457 433. J. H. Davis, *Chem. Lett.*, 2004, **33**, 1072 - 1077.
- 2458 434. J. L. Anderson, D. W. Armstrong and G.-T. Wei, *Anal. Chem.*, 2006, **78**, 2892-2902.
- 2459 435. J. P. Hallett and T. Welton, *Chem. Rev.*, 2011, **111**, 3508-3576.
- 2460 436. M. Freemantle, *Chem. Eng. News Arch.*, 1998, **76**, 32-37.
- 2461 437. G. Laus, G. Bentivoglio, H. Schottenberger, V. Kahlenberg, H. Kopacka, T. Röder and H. Sixta,  
2462 *Lenzinger Berichte*, 2005, **84**, 71-85.
- 2463 438. N. V. Plechkova and K. R. Seddon, *Chem. Soc. Rev.*, 2008, **37**, 123-150.
- 2464 439. Q.-P. Liu, X.-D. Hou, N. Li and M.-H. Zong, *Green Chem.*, 2012, **14**, 304-307.
- 2465 440. H. Olivier-Bourbigou, L. Magna and D. Morvan, *Appl. Catal. A*, 2010, **373**, 1-56.
- 2466 441. Q. Zhang, S. Zhang and Y. Deng, *Green Chem.*, 2011, **13**, 2619-2637.

- 2467 442. C. Hardacre, J. D. Holbrey, M. Nieuwenhuyzen and T. G. A. Youngs, *Acc. Chem. Res.*, 2007, **40**,  
2468 1146-1155.
- 2469 443. O. A. El Seoud, A. Koschella, L. C. Fidale, S. Dorn and T. Heinze, *Biomacromolecules*, 2007, **8**,  
2470 2629-2647.
- 2471 444. T. C. Schutt, G. A. Hegde, V. S. Bharadwaj, A. J. Johns and C. M. Maupin, *J. Phys. Chem. B*,  
2472 2017, **121**, 843-853.
- 2473 445. T. G. A. Youngs, C. Hardacre and J. D. Holbrey, *J. Phys. Chem. B*, 2007, **111**, 13765-13774.
- 2474 446. T. G. A. Youngs, J. D. Holbrey, M. Deetlefs, M. Nieuwenhuyzen, M. F. Costa Gomes and C.  
2475 Hardacre, *ChemPhysChem*, 2006, **7**, 2279-2281.
- 2476 447. Q. Liu, M. H. A. Janssen, F. van Rantwijk and R. A. Sheldon, *Green Chem.*, 2005, **7**, 39-42.
- 2477 448. M. E. Zakrzewska, E. Bogel-Lukasik and R. Bogel-Lukasik, *Energy Fuels*, 2010, **24**, 737-745.
- 2478 449. F. Hermanutz, F. Gähr, E. Uerdingen, F. Meister and B. Kosan, *Macromol. Symp.*, 2008, **262**, 23-  
2479 27.
- 2480 450. C. Graenacher, Google Patents, 1934.
- 2481 451. N. Sun, H. Rodriguez, M. Rahman and R. D. Rogers, *Chem. Commun.*, 2011, **47**, 1405-1421.
- 2482 452. R. P. Swatloski, S. K. Spear, J. D. Holbrey and R. D. Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2002, **124**,  
2483 4974-4975.
- 2484 453. J. S. Moulthrop, R. P. Swatloski, G. Moyna and R. D. Rogers, *Chem. Commun.*, 2005, 1557-  
2485 1559.
- 2486 454. Y. Li, X. Liu, Y. Zhang, K. Jiang, J. Wang and S. Zhang, *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2017, **5**,  
2487 3417-3428.
- 2488 455. H. Zhang, J. Wu, J. Zhang and J. He, *Macromolecules*, 2005, **38**, 8272 - 8277.
- 2489 456. T. R. Dawsey and C. L. McCormick, *J. Macromol. Sci., Part C*, 1990, **30**, 405-440.
- 2490 457. N. J. Cao, Q. Xu and L. F. Chen, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 1995, **51**, 21-28.
- 2491 458. J. Vitz, T. Erdmenger, C. Haensch and U. S. Schubert, *Green Chem.*, 2009, **11**, 417-424.
- 2492 459. H. Ohno and Y. Fukaya, *Chem. Lett.*, 2009, **38**, 2-7.
- 2493 460. L. Feng and Z.-l. Chen, *J. Mol. Liq.*, 2008, **142**, 1-5.
- 2494 461. V. Rigual, T. M. Santos, J. C. Domínguez, M. V. Alonso, M. Oliet, F. Rodriguez, *Bioresour.*  
2495 *Technol.*, 2018, **251**, 197-203.

- 2496 462. X. Yu, X. Bao, C. Zhou, L. Zhang, AE-GA Yagoub, H. Yang, et al., *Ultrason. Sonochem.*, 2018, 2497 41, 410-418.
- 2498 463. S. K. Paul and S. Chakraborty, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2018, **253**, 85-93.
- 2499 464. I. Kilpeläinen, H. Xie, A. King, M. Granstrom, S. Heikkinen and D. S. Argyropoulos, *J. Agric. Food Chem.*, 2007, **55**, 9142-9148. 2500
- 2501 465. H. Xie, S. Li and S. Zhang, *Green Chem.*, 2005, **7**, 606-608.
- 2502 466. D. A. Fort, R. C. Remsing, R. P. Swatloski, P. Moyna, G. Moyna and R. D. Rogers, *Green Chem.*, 2007, **9**, 63-69. 2503
- 2504 467. B. Li, J. Asikkala, I. Filpponen and D. S. Argyropoulos, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2010, **49**, 2477-2505 2484.
- 2506 468. K. C. Badgajar and B. M. Bhanage, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2015, **178**, 2-18.
- 2507 469. M. G. Freire, A. R. R. Teles, M. A. A. Rocha, B. Schröder, C. M. S. S. Neves, P. J. Carvalho, D. 2508 V. Evtuguin, L. M. N. B. F. Santos and J. A. P. Coutinho, *J. Chem. Eng. Data*, 2011, **56**, 4813-2509 4822.
- 2510 470. T. V. Doherty, M. Mora-Pale, S. E. Foley, R. J. Linhardt and J. S. Dordick, *Green Chem.*, 2010, 2511 **12**, 1967-1975.
- 2512 471. W. Li, N. Sun, B. Stoner, X. Jiang, X. Lu and R. D. Rogers, *Green Chem.*, 2011, **13**, 2038-2047.
- 2513 472. L. K. J. Hauru, M. Hummel, A. W. T. King, I. Kilpeläinen and H. Sixta, *Biomacromolecules*, 2514 2012, **13**, 2896-2905.
- 2515 473. J. Shi, K. Balamurugan, R. Parthasarathi, N. Sathitsuksanoh, S. Zhang, V. Stavila, V. 2516 Subramanian, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *Green Chem.*, 2014, **16**, 3830-3840.
- 2517 474. K. M. Gupta, Z. Hu and J. Jiang, *RSC Adv.*, 2013, **3**, 12794-12801.
- 2518 475. H. Liu, K. L. Sale, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *J. Phys. Chem. B*, 2011, **115**, 10251-10258.
- 2519 476. Ninomiya K, Utami ARI, Tsuge Y, Kuroda K, Ogino C, Taima T, et al. *Chem. Eng. J.*, 2018, **334**, 2520 657-663.
- 2521 477. A. G. Cruz, C. Scullin, C. Mu, G. Cheng, V. Stavila, P. Varanasi, D. Xu, J. Mentel, Y.-D. 2522 Chuang, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2013, **6**, 1-10.
- 2523 478. H. Wu, M. Mora-Pale, J. Miao, T. V. Doherty, R. J. Linhardt and J. S. Dordick, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 2865-2875. 2524

- 2525 479. A. S. A. da Silva, R. S. S. Teixeira, T. Endo, E. P. S. Bon and S.-H. Lee, *Green Chem.*, 2013, **15**,  
2526 1991-2001.
- 2527 480. C. Li, D. Tanjore, W. He, J. Wong, J. L. Gardner, K. L. Sale, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh,  
2528 *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2013, **6**, 1-13.
- 2529 481. K. Ninomiya, H. Soda, C. Ogino, K. Takahashi and N. Shimizu, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **128**,  
2530 188-192.
- 2531 482. W. Ji, Z. Ding, J. Liu, Q. Song, X. Xia, H. Gao, H. Wang and W. Gu, *Energy Fuels*, 2012, **26**,  
2532 6393-6403.
- 2533 483. Y. Wang, L. Wei, K. Li, Y. Ma, N. Ma, S. Ding, L. Wang, D. Zhao, B. Yan, W. Wan, Q. Zhang,  
2534 X. Wang, J. Wang and H. Li, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **170**, 499-505.
- 2535 484. A. Diop, A. H. Bouazza, C. Daneault and D. Montplaisir, *BioRes.*, 2013, **8**, 4270-4282.
- 2536 485. D. Fu, G. Mazza and Y. Tamaki, *J. Agric. Food Chem.*, 2010, **58**, 2915-2922.
- 2537 486. S. H. Lee, T. V. Doherty, R. J. Linhardt and J. S. Dordick, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2009, **102**, 1368-  
2538 1376.
- 2539 487. J. L. Wen, T. Q. Yuan, S. L. Sun, F. Xu and R. C. Sun, *Green Chem.*, 2014, **16**, 181-190.
- 2540 488. Y.-X. An, N. Li, H. Wu, W.-Y. Lou and M.-H. Zong, *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2015, **3**,  
2541 2951-2958.
- 2542 489. N. Sathitsuksanoh, K. M. Holtman, D. J. Yelle, T. Morgan, V. Stavila, J. Pelton, H. Blanch, B. A.  
2543 Simmons and A. George, *Green Chem.*, 2014, **16**, 1236-1247.
- 2544 490. A. Brandt, L. Chen, B. E. van Dongen, T. Welton and J. P. Hallett, *Green Chem.*, 2015, **17**, 5019-  
2545 5034.
- 2546 491. P. Varanasi, P. Singh, R. Arora, P. D. Adams, M. Auer, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *Bioresour.*  
2547 *Technol.*, 2012, **126**, 156-161.
- 2548 492. D. Yang, L.-X. Zhong, T.-Q. Yuan, X.-W. Peng and R.-C. Sun, *Ind. Crops Prod.*, 2013, **43**, 141-  
2549 149.
- 2550 493. S. Singh, P. Varanasi, P. Singh, P. D. Adams, M. Auer and B. A. Simmons, *Biomass Bioenergy*,  
2551 2013, **54**, 276-283.
- 2552 494. L. Moghaddam, Z. Zhang, R. M. Wellard, J. P. Bartley, I. M. O'Hara and W. O. S. Doherty,  
2553 *Biomass Bioenergy*, 2014, **70**, 498-512.
- 2554 495. A. George, K. Tran, T. J. Morgan, P. I. Benke, C. Berrueco, E. Lorente, B. C. Wu, J. D. Keasling,  
2555 B. A. Simmons and B. M. Holmes, *Green Chem.*, 2011, **13**, 3375-3385.

- 2556 496. S. S. Y. Tan, D. R. MacFarlane, J. Upfal, L. A. Edye, W. O. S. Doherty, A. F. Patti, J. M. Pringle  
2557 and J. L. Scott, *Green Chem.*, 2009, **11**, 339-345.
- 2558 497. J. Zhang, Y. Wang, L. Zhang, R. Zhang, G. Liu and G. Cheng, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **151**,  
2559 402-405.
- 2560 498. G. Cheng, P. Varanasi, C. Li, H. Liu, Y. B. Melnichenko, B. A. Simmons, M. S. Kent and S.  
2561 Singh, *Biomacromolecules*, 2011, **12**, 933-941.
- 2562 499. G. Cheng, P. Varanasi, R. Arora, V. Stavila, B. A. Simmons, M. S. Kent and S. Singh, *J. Phys.*  
2563 *Chem. B*, 2012, **116**, 10049-10054.
- 2564 500. J. A. Perez-Pimienta, M. G. Lopez-Ortega, P. Varanasi, V. Stavila, G. Cheng, S. Singh and B. A.  
2565 Simmons, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **127**, 18-24.
- 2566 501. T. N. Ang, G. C. Ngoh, A. S. M. Chua and M. G. Lee, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2012, **5**, 1-10.
- 2567 502. T. Kanbayashi and H. Miyafuji, *J. Wood Sci.*, 2014, **60**, 152-159.
- 2568 503. T. Kanbayashi and H. Miyafuji, *Planta*, 2015, **242**, 509-518.
- 2569 504. S. Singh, B. A. Simmons and K. P. Vogel, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2009, **104**, 68-75.
- 2570 505. X. Zhang, J. Ma, Z. Ji, G. H. Yang, X. Zhou and F. Xu, *Microscopy research and technique*,  
2571 2014, **77**, 609-618.
- 2572 506. L. Sun, C. Li, Z. Xue, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *RSC Adv.*, 2013, **3**, 2017-2027.
- 2573 507. M. Shafiei, *Ph.D. Thesis*, 2014.
- 2574 508. A. S. Amarasekara and P. Shanbhag, *Bioenerg. Res.*, 2012, **6**, 719-724.
- 2575 509. B. M. Matsagar and P. L. Dhepe, *Catal. Sci. Technol.*, 2015, **5**, 531-539.
- 2576 510. D. Groff, A. George, N. Sun, N. Sathitsuksanoh, G. Bokinsky, B. A. Simmons, B. M. Holmes and  
2577 J. D. Keasling, *Green Chem.*, 2013, **15**, 1264-1267.
- 2578 511. J. Tao, T. Kishimoto, M. Hamada and N. Nakajima, *Holzforschung*, 2017, **71**, 21-26.
- 2579 512. C. Li and Z. K. Zhao, *Adv. Synth. Catal.*, 2007, **349**, 1847-1850.
- 2580 513. B. Li, I. Filpponen and D. S. Argyropoulos, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2010, **49**, 3126-3136.
- 2581 514. C. Li, Q. Wang and Z. K. Zhao, *Green Chem.*, 2008, **10**, 177-182.
- 2582 515. Z. Zhang, I. M. O'Hara and W. O. Doherty, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **120**, 149-156.
- 2583 516. B. J. Cox and J. G. Ekerdt, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **134**, 59-65.



- 2584 517. Y. Liu, W. Xiao, S. Xia and P. Ma, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2013, **92**, 218-222.
- 2585 518. N. Muhammad, Z. Man, M. A. Bustam, M. I. A. Mutalib, C. D. Wilfred and S. Rafiq, *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 2011, **165**, 998-1009.
- 2586
- 2587 519. K. Zhuo, Q. Du, G. Bai, C. Wang, Y. Chen and J. Wang, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2015, **115**, 49-53.
- 2588 520. Z. Zhang, I. M. O'Hara and W. O. S. Doherty, *Green Chem.*, 2013, **15**, 431-438.
- 2589 521. H. Satria, K. Kuroda, T. Endo, K. Takada, K. Ninomiya and K. Takahashi, *ACS Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2017, **5**, 708-713.
- 2590
- 2591 522. A. M. da Costa Lopes and R. Bogel-Lukasik, *ChemSusChem*, 2015, **8**, 947-965.
- 2592 523. Uju, K. Abe, N. Uemura, T. Oshima, M. Goto and N. Kamiya, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **138**, 87-94.
- 2593
- 2594 524. Q. Qing, R. Hu, Y. He, Y. Zhang and L. Wang, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 2014, **98**, 5275-5286.
- 2595
- 2596 525. A. S. Amarasekara and O. S. Owereh, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2009, **48**, 10152-10155.
- 2597 526. A. S. Amarasekara and B. Wiredu, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2011, **50**, 12276-12280.
- 2598 527. A. S. Amarasekara and P. Shanbhag, *BioEnergy Res.*, 2013, **6**, 719-724.
- 2599 528. F. Jiang, Q. Zhu, D. Ma, X. Liu and X. Han, *J. Mol. Catal. A: Chem.*, 2011, **334**, 8-12.
- 2600 529. F. Tao, H. Song and L. Chou, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 9000-9006.
- 2601 530. S. Kahani, M. Shafiei, A. Abdolmaleki and K. Karimi, *J. Cleaner Prod.*, 2017, **168**, 952-962.
- 2602 531. Y. Han Song, C-W. Park, N-H. Kim and S-H. Lee, *Holzforschung*, 2017, **71**, 43-50.
- 2603 532. J. A. Perez-Pimienta, N. Sathitsuksanoh, V. S. Thompson, K. Tran, T. Ponce-Noyola, V. Stavila, et al., *Biotechnol. Biofuels.*, 2017, **10**, 72.
- 2604
- 2605 533. J. Xu, J. Xu, S. Zhang, J. Xia, X. Liu, X. Chu, et al., *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2018, **249**, 1058-1061.
- 2606 534. C. L. B. Reis, LMAe Silva, THS Rodrigues, AKN Félix, Santiago-Aguiar RSd, Canuto KM, et al., *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2017, **224**, 694-701.
- 2607
- 2608 535. J. Sun, NVSNM Konda, R. Parthasarathi, T. Dutta, M. Valiev, F. Xu, et al. *Green Chem.*, 2017, **19**, 3152-3163.
- 2609
- 2610 536. T. Auxenfans, E. Husson and C. Sarazin, *Biochem. Eng. J.*, 2017, **117**, Part A, 77-86.
- 2611 537. R. M. Wahlström and A. Suurnäkki, *Green Chem.*, 2015, **17**, 694-714.

- 2612 538. J. Xu, X. Liu, J. He, L. Hu, B. Dai and B. Wu, *J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol.*, 2015, **90**, 57-63.
- 2613 539. H. Li, A. Kankaanpaa, H. Xiong, M. Hummel, H. Sixta, H. Ojamo and O. Turunen, *Enzyme*  
2614 *Microb. Technol.*, 2013, **53**, 414-419.
- 2615 540. J. Xu, B. Wu, L. Hu, Z. Wu, N. Xu, B. Dai and J. He, *Chem. Eng. J.*, 2015, **267**, 163-169.
- 2616 541. J. Xu, B. He, B. Wu, B. Wang, C. Wang and L. Hu, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **157**, 166-173.
- 2617 542. A. A. N. Gunny, D. Arbain, R. Edwin Gumba, B. C. Jong and P. Jamal, *Bioresour. Technol.*,  
2618 2014, **155**, 177-181.
- 2619 543. J. I. Park, E. J. Steen, H. Burd, S. S. Evans, A. M. Redding-Johnson, T. Batth, P. I. Benke, P.  
2620 D'Haeseleer, N. Sun, K. L. Sale, J. D. Keasling, T. S. Lee, C. J. Petzold, A. Mukhopadhyay, S.  
2621 W. Singer, B. A. Simmons and J. M. Gladden, *PLoS One*, 2012, **7**, e37010.
- 2622 544. A. A. Elgharbawy, M. Z. Alam, M. Moniruzzaman and M. Goto, *Biochem. Eng. J.*, 2016, **109**,  
2623 252-267.
- 2624 545. C. Portillo Mdel and A. Saadeddin, *Crit. Rev. Biotechnol.*, 2015, **35**, 294-301.
- 2625 546. J. Xu, P. Xiong and B. He, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **200**, 961-970.
- 2626 547. C. Yu, B. A. Simmons, S. W. Singer, M. P. Thelen and J. S. VanderGheynst, *Appl. Microbiol.*  
2627 *Biotechnol.*, 2016, **100**, 10237-10249.
- 2628 548. A. S. Dotsenko, G. S. Dotsenko, O. V. Senko, N. A. Stepanov, I. V. Lyagin, Efremenko EN, et  
2629 al., *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2018, **250**, 429-438.
- 2630 549. M. Ouellet, S. Datta, D. C. Dibble, P. R. Tamrakar, P. I. Benke, C. Li, S. Singh, K. L. Sale, P. D.  
2631 Adams, J. D. Keasling, B. A. Simmons, B. M. Holmes and A. Mukhopadhyay, *Green Chem.*,  
2632 2011, **13**, 2743-2749.
- 2633 550. F. Xu, J. Sun, N. V. S. N. M. Konda, J. Shi, T. Dutta, C. D. Scown, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh,  
2634 *Energy Environ. Sci.*, 2016, **9**, 1042-1049.
- 2635 551. K. Nakashima, K. Yamaguchi, N. Taniguchi, S. Arai, R. Yamada, S. Katahira, N. Ishida, H.  
2636 Takahashi, C. Ogino and A. Kondo, *Green Chem.*, 2011, **13**, 2948-2953.
- 2637 552. A. P. Dadi, S. Varanasi and C. A. Schall, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2006, **95**, 904-910.
- 2638 553. E. Husson, S. Buchoux, C. Avondo, D. Cailleu, K. Djellab, I. Gosselin, O. Wattraint and C.  
2639 Sarazin, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 7335-7342.
- 2640 554. I. G. Audu, N. Brosse, L. Desharnais and S. K. Rakshit, *Energy Fuels*, 2013, **27**, 189-196.

- 2641 555. J. Bian, F. Peng, X.-P. Peng, X. Xiao, P. Peng, F. Xu and R.-C. Sun, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2014,  
2642 **100**, 211-217.
- 2643 556. X. D. Hou, T. J. Smith, N. Li and M. H. Zong, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2012, **109**, 2484-2493.
- 2644 557. X.-D. Hou, N. Li and M.-H. Zong, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **136**, 469-474.
- 2645 558. S. K. Karatzos, L. A. Edye and W. O. S. Doherty, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2012, **5**, 1-12.
- 2646 559. K. M. Torr, K. T. Love, O. P. Cetinkol, L. A. Donaldson, A. George, B. M. Holmes and B. A.  
2647 Simmons, *Green Chem.*, 2012, **14**, 778-787.
- 2648 560. Uju, A. Nakamoto, Y. Shoda, M. Goto, W. Tokuhara, Y. Noritake, S. Katahira, N. Ishida, C.  
2649 Ogino and N. Kamiya, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **135**, 103-108.
- 2650 561. P. Verdia, A. Brandt, J. P. Hallett, M. J. Ray and T. Welton, *Green Chem.*, 2014, **16**, 1617-1627.
- 2651 562. L. Wu, S.-H. Lee and T. Endo, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **140**, 90-96.
- 2652 563. W. Xiao, W. Yin, S. Xia and P. Ma, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2012, **87**, 2019-2023.
- 2653 564. L. W. Yoon, T. N. Ang, G. C. Ngoh and A. S. M. Chua, *Biomass Bioenergy*, 2012, **36**, 160-169.
- 2654 565. A. Brandt, M. J. Ray, T. Q. To, D. J. Leak, R. J. Murphy and T. Welton, *Green Chem.*, 2011, **13**,  
2655 2489-2499.
- 2656 566. Ö. Çetinkol, D. Dibble, G. Cheng, M. Kent, B. Knierim, M. Auer, D. Wemmer, J. Pelton, Y.  
2657 Melnichenko, J. Ralph, B. Simmons and B. Holmes, *Biofuels*, 2010, **1**, 33-46.
- 2658 567. D. Fu and G. Mazza, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 8003-8010.
- 2659 568. D. Fu and G. Mazza, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 7008-7011.
- 2660 569. S. H. Ha, N. L. Mai, G. An and Y. M. Koo, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 1214-1219.  
2661 570. S. Karatzos, L. A. Edye and W. O. S. Doherty, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 9325-29.
- 2662 571. C.-H. Kuo and C.-K. Lee, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2009, **77**, 41-46.
- 2663 572. K. Ninomiya, A. Kohori, M. Tatsumi, K. Osawa, T. Endo, R. Kakuchi, C. Ogino, N. Shimizu and  
2664 K. Takahashi, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2015, **176**, 169-174.
- 2665 573. K. Ninomiya, T. Yamauchi, C. Ogino, N. Shimizu and K. Takahashi, *Biochem. Eng. J.*, 2014, **90**,  
2666 90-95.
- 2667 574. J. Zhang, X. Ma, J. Yu, X. Zhang and T. Tan, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2011, **102**, 4585-4589.
- 2668 575. K. M. Torr, K. T. Love, B. A. Simmons and S. J. Hill, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2016, **113**, 540-549.

- 2669 576. H. T. Tan, K. T. Lee and A. R. Mohamed, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2011, **83**, 1862-1868.
- 2670 577. N. Sun, R. Parthasarathi, A. M. Socha, J. Shi, S. Zhang, V. Stavila, K. L. Sale, B. A. Simmons  
2671 and S. Singh, *Green Chem.*, 2014, **16**, 2546-2557.
- 2672 578. I. P. Samayam and C. A. Schall, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2010, **101**.
- 2673 579. T. Auxenfans, S. Buchoux, K. Djellab, C. Avondo, E. Husson and C. Sarazin, *Carbohydr.*  
2674 *Polym.*, 2012, **90**, 805-813.
- 2675 580. T. Auxenfans, S. Buchoux, D. Larcher, G. Husson, E. Husson and C. Sarazin, *Energy Convers.*  
2676 *Manage.*, 2014, **88**, 1094-1103.
- 2677 581. F. Hong, X. Guo, S. Zhang, S.-f. Han, G. Yang and L. J. Jönsson, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2012, **104**,  
2678 503-508.
- 2679 582. W. Katinonkul, J.-S. Lee, S. H. Ha and J.-Y. Park, *Energy*, 2012, **47**, 11-16.
- 2680 583. Q. Li, Y. He, M. Xian, G. Jun, X. Xu and J. Yang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2009, **100**, 3570 - 3575.
- 2681 584. K. Ninomiya, A. Ohta, S. Omote, C. Ogino, K. Takahashi and N. Shimizu, *Chem. Eng. J.*, 2013,  
2682 **215–216**, 811-818.
- 2683 585. J. Viell, H. Wulfhorst, T. Schmidt, U. Commandeur, R. Fischer, A. Spiess and W. Marquardt,  
2684 *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **146**, 144-151.
- 2685 586. B. R. Caes, T. R. Vanoosbree, F. Lu, J. Ralph, C. T. Maravelias and R. T. Raines, *ChemSusChem*,  
2686 2013, **6**, 2083-2089.
- 2687 587. C. Abels, K. Thimm, H. Wulfhorst, A. C. Spiess and M. Wessling, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013,  
2688 **149**, 58-64.
- 2689 588. N. Sun, H. Liu, N. Sathitsuksanoh, V. Stavila, M. Sawant, A. Bonito, K. Tran, A. George, K. L.  
2690 Sale, S. Singh, B. A. Simmons and B. M. Holmes, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2013, **6**.
- 2691 589. K. Shill, S. Padmanabhan, Q. Xin, J. M. Prausnitz, D. S. Clark and H. W. Blanch, *Biotechnol.*  
2692 *Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 511-520.
- 2693 590. D. C. Dibble, C. Li, L. Sun, A. George, A. Cheng, O. P. Cetinkol, P. Benke, B. M. Holmes, S.  
2694 Singh and B. A. Simmons, *Green Chem.*, 2011, **13**, 3255-3264.
- 2695 591. J. Xu, B. Liu, H. Hou and J. Hu, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2017, **234**, 406-414.
- 2696 592. U. Hamidah, T. Arakawa, Y. Y. H'ng, A. Nakagawa-izumi, M. Kishino, *J. Wood Sci.*, 2018, **64**,  
2697 149-156.
- 2698 593. N. L. Mai, K. Ahn and Y.-M. Koo, *Process Biochem.*, 2014, **49**, 872-881.

- 2699 594. Z. Qiu and G. M. Aita, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **129**, 532-537.
- 2700 595. Y. X. An, M. H. Zong, H. Wu and N. Li, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2015, **192**, 165-171.
- 2701 596. N. Sathitsuksanoh, M. Sawant, Q. Truong, J. Tan, C. G. Canlas, N. Sun, W. Zhang, S. Rennecker,  
2702 T. Prasomsri, J. Shi, Ö. Çetinkol, S. Singh, B. A. Simmons and A. George, *BioEnergy Res.*, 2015,  
2703 **8**, 973-981.
- 2704 597. K. E. Gutowski, G. A. Broker, H. D. Willauer, J. G. Huddleston, R. P. Swatloski, J. D. Holbrey  
2705 and R. D. Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2003, **125**, 6632-6633.
- 2706 598. D. Feng, L. Li, F. Yang, W. Tan, G. Zhao, H. Zou, M. Xian and Y. Zhang, *Appl. Microbiol.*  
2707 *Biotechnol.*, 2011, **91**, 399-405.
- 2708 599. K. Shill, S. Padmanabhan, Q. Xin, J. Prausnitz, D. Clark and H. Blanch, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*,  
2709 2010, **108**, 511 - 520.
- 2710 600. N. L. Mai, N. T. Nguyen, J.-I. Kim, H.-M. Park, S.-K. Lee and Y.-M. Koo, *J. Chromatogr.*, 2012,  
2711 **1227**, 67-72.
- 2712 601. L. T. P. Trinh, Y. J. Lee, J.-W. Lee, H.-J. Bae and H.-J. Lee, *Sep. Purif. Technol.*, 2013, **120**, 86-  
2713 91.
- 2714 602. X. Liang, Y. Fu and J. Chang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2016, **220**, 289-296.
- 2715 603. X. Liang, Y. Fu, J. Chang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2017, **245**, 760-767.
- 2716 604. V. Rigual, T. M. Santos, J. C. Domínguez, M. V. Alonso, M. Oliet, Rodriguez F, *ACS*  
2717 *Sustainable Chem. Eng.*, 2017, **5**, 2384-2392.
- 2718 605. G. Mancini, S. Papirio, P. N. L. Lens and G. Esposito, *Energy Fuels*, 2016, **30**, 1892-1903.
- 2719 606. J. Gao, L. Chen, K. Yuan, H. Huang and Z. Yan, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **150**, 352-358.
- 2720 607. J. Gao, L. Chen, Z. Yan and L. Wang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **132**, 361-364.
- 2721 608. W. Li and G. Xu, *Environ. Technol.*, 2016, 1-9.
- 2722 609. Z. Gong, H. Shen, Q. Wang, X. Yang, H. Xie and Z. K. Zhao, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2013, **6**, 1-12.
- 2723 610. H. Xie, H. Shen, Z. Gong, Q. Wang, Z. K. Zhao and F. Bai, *Green Chem.*, 2012, **14**, 1202-1210.
- 2724 611. G. Bokinsky, P. P. Peralta-Yahya, A. George, B. M. Holmes, E. J. Steen, J. Dietrich, T. Soon Lee,  
2725 D. Tullman-Ercek, C. A. Voigt, B. A. Simmons and J. D. Keasling, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*,  
2726 2011, **108**, 19949-19954.

- 2727 612. Q. Huang, Q. Wang, Z. Gong, G. Jin, H. Shen, S. Xiao, H. Xie, S. Ye, J. Wang and Z. K. Zhao, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2013, **130**, 339-344.  
2728
- 2729 613. L.-P. Liu, M.-H. Zong, R. J. Linhardt, W.-Y. Lou, N. Li, C. Huang and H. Wu, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2016, **9**, 266.  
2730
- 2731 614. P. Varanasi, P. Singh, M. Auer, P. D. Adams, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2013, **6**, 1-9.  
2732
- 2733 615. Z. Sun, M. Cheng, H. Li, T. Shi, M. Yuan, X. Wang and Z. Jiang, *RSC Adv.*, 2012, **2**, 9058-9065.
- 2734 616. Y. Muranaka, T. Suzuki, H. Sawanishi, I. Hasegawa and K. Mae, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, 2014, **53**, 11611-11621.  
2735
- 2736 617. S. Xiao, B. Liu, Y. Wang, Z. Fang and Z. Zhang, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **151**, 361-366.
- 2737 618. S. M. Sen, J. B. Binder, R. T. Raines and C. T. Maravelias, *Biotechnol. Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2012, **6**, 444-452.  
2738
- 2739 619. N. M. Konda, J. Shi, S. Singh, H. W. Blanch, B. A. Simmons and D. Klein-Marcuschamer, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 1-11.  
2740
- 2741 620. N. R. Baral and A. Shah, *Biotechnol. Bioprod. Biorefin.*, 2016, **10**, 70-88.
- 2742 621. A. George, A. Brandt, K. Tran, S. M. S. N. S. Zahari, D. Klein-Marcuschamer, N. Sun, N. Sathitsuksanoh, J. Shi, V. Stavila, R. Parthasarathi, S. Singh, B. M. Holmes, T. Welton, B. A. Simmons and J. P. Hallett, *Green Chem.*, 2015, **17**, 1728-1734.  
2743  
2744
- 2745 622. J. C. de Andrade Neto, A. de Souza Cabral, L. R. D. de Oliveira, R. B. Torres and A. d. A. Morandim-Giannetti, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, 2016, **143**, 279-287.  
2746
- 2747 623. P. Oleskowicz-Popiel, D. Klein-Marcuschamer, B. A. Simmons and H. W. Blanch, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2014, **158**, 294-299.  
2748
- 2749 624. A. M. Socha, R. Parthasarathi, J. Shi, S. Pattathil, D. Whyte, M. Bergeron, A. George, K. Tran, 2750 V. Stavila, S. Venkatachalam, M. G. Hahn, B. A. Simmons and S. Singh, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 2014, **111**, E3587-E3595.  
2751
- 2752 625. N. Muhammad, Z. Man and M. A. Bustam Khalil, *Eur. J. Wood Prod.*, 2012, **70**, 125-133.
- 2753 626. C.-Z. Liu, F. Wang, A. R. Stiles and C. Guo, *Appl. Energy*, 2012, **92**, 406-414.
- 2754 627. DJGP van Osch, LJBK Kollau, A. van den Bruinhorst, S. Asikainen, MAA Rocha, M. C. Kroon, 2755 *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* 2017, **19**, 2636-65.
- 2756 628. N. Uppugundla, L. da Costa Sousa, S. P. Chundawat, X. Yu, B. Simmons, S. Singh, X. Gao, R. 2757 Kumar, C. E. Wyman, B. E. Dale and V. Balan, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 1-14.

- 2758 629. X. Gao, R. Kumar, S. Singh, B. A. Simmons, V. Balan, B. E. Dale and C. E. Wyman, *Biotechnol. Biofuels*, 2014, **7**, 1-13.  
2759
- 2760 630. M. Mora-Pale, L. Meli, T. V. Doherty, R. J. Linhardt and J. S. Dordick, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2011, **108**, 1229-1245.  
2761
- 2762 631. A. Brandt-Talbot, F. J. V. Gschwend, P. S. Fennell, T. M. Lammens, B. Tan, J. Weale, et al., *Green Chem.*, 2017, **19**, 3078-3102.  
2763
- 2764 632. M. Zavrel, D. Bross, M. Funke, J. Buchs, A. C. Spiess, *Bioresour. Technol.*, 2009, **100**, 2580-2587.  
2765
- 2766 633. T. Li, Q. Fang, H. Chen, F. Qi, X. Ou, X. Zhao and D. Liu, *RSC adv.*, 2017, **7**, 10609-10617.
- 2767 634. N. Sathitsuksanoh, Z. Zhu and Y.-H. P. Zhang, *Cellulose.*, 2012, **19**, 1161-1172.
- 2768 635. K. Wang, H. Yan, Y. Feng, X. Run and C. Sun, *Bioresour. Technol.*, **102**, 4524-4529.
- 2769 636. C.-H. Kuo and C.-K. Lee, *Carbohydr. Polym.*, **77**, 41-46.
- 2770 637. Y. Muranaka, T. Suzuki, H. Sawanishi, I. Hasegawa, and K. Mae, *Ind. Eng. Chem. Res.*, **29**, 11611-11621.  
2771